

# Brocade 5600 vRouter Basic System Configuration Guide

Supporting Brocade 5600 vRouter 4.2R1

© 2016, Brocade Communications Systems, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Brocade, Brocade Assurance, the B-wing symbol, ClearLink, DCX, Fabric OS, HyperEdge, ICX, MLX, MyBrocade, OpenScript, VCS, VDX, Vplane, and Vyatta are registered trademarks, and Fabric Vision is a trademark of Brocade Communications Systems, Inc., in the United States and/or in other countries. Other brands, products, or service names mentioned may be trademarks of others.

Notice: This document is for informational purposes only and does not set forth any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning any equipment, equipment feature, or service offered or to be offered by Brocade. Brocade reserves the right to make changes to this document at any time, without notice, and assumes no responsibility for its use. This informational document describes features that may not be currently available. Contact a Brocade sales office for information on feature and product availability. Export of technical data contained in this document may require an export license from the United States government.

The authors and Brocade Communications Systems, Inc. assume no liability or responsibility to any person or entity with respect to the accuracy of this document or any loss, cost, liability, or damages arising from the information contained herein or the computer programs that accompany it.

The product described by this document may contain open source software covered by the GNU General Public License or other open source license agreements. To find out which open source software is included in Brocade products, view the licensing terms applicable to the open source software, and obtain a copy of the programming source code, please visit <http://www.brocade.com/support/oscd>.

# Contents

---

<b>Preface</b> .....	<b>9</b>
Document conventions.....	9
Text formatting conventions.....	9
Command syntax conventions.....	9
Notes, cautions, and warnings.....	10
Brocade resources.....	10
Contacting Brocade Technical Support.....	10
Brocade customers.....	10
Brocade OEM customers.....	11
Document feedback.....	11
<b>About This Guide</b> .....	<b>13</b>
<b>Brocade vRouter Architecture</b> .....	<b>15</b>
<b>Using the CLI</b> .....	<b>17</b>
CLI features.....	17
Command modes.....	17
Vyatta CLI and system shell.....	18
Accessing the CLI.....	18
The predefined user account.....	19
User privilege levels.....	19
Command prompts.....	20
Using special characters in commands.....	20
Command completion.....	21
Command history.....	23
Command editing.....	23
Filtering command output.....	24
Operational commands.....	25
Running operational commands.....	25
Running an operational command in configuration mode.....	25
<b>Basic commands for using the CLI</b> .....	<b>27</b>
copy file <from-file> to <to-file>.....	27
delete file <file>.....	29
exit (operational).....	30
run.....	31
show file <file>.....	32
<b>Working with Configuration</b> .....	<b>35</b>
Configuration basics.....	35
Terminology.....	35
Location of configuration information.....	36
Configuration hierarchy.....	37
Entering and exiting configuration mode.....	37
Navigating in configuration mode.....	37
Viewing configuration.....	38
Viewing configuration from operational mode.....	39
Changing configuration information.....	39

Adding or modifying configuration.....	39
Deleting configuration.....	40
Committing configuration changes.....	40
Discarding configuration changes.....	41
Managing system configuration.....	41
Saving the running configuration.....	41
Loading a saved configuration.....	42
Booting from a saved configuration file.....	43
Merging saved and running configurations.....	43
Archiving configuration versions on commit.....	43
Comparing configuration versions.....	43
Cloning configuration across system images.....	43
Performing file operations on configuration files and directories.....	44
<b>Configuration Commands.....</b>	<b>45</b>
clone system config <dest-image-name>.....	46
commit.....	48
compare.....	49
configure.....	50
delete.....	51
discard.....	52
edit.....	53
exit (configuration).....	54
load.....	55
merge.....	57
monitor command <show-command>.....	59
save.....	60
set.....	62
show.....	63
show configuration (operational).....	65
show system commit.....	67
show system commit diff <rev-num>.....	68
show system commit file <rev-num>.....	69
system config-management commit-archive location <location>.....	71
system config-management commit-revisions <revisions>.....	73
top.....	74
up.....	75
<b>System Management.....</b>	<b>77</b>
Basic system configuration.....	77
Configuring host information.....	77
Configuring DNS.....	80
Configuring date and time.....	82
Configuring CPU affinity.....	84
Configuring CPU affinity on the default data plane.....	85
Monitoring system information.....	85
Showing host information.....	85
Showing the date and time.....	85
<b>System Management Commands.....</b>	<b>87</b>
clear console.....	89
clear interfaces counters.....	90

monitor interfaces.....	91
poweroff.....	92
reboot.....	93
reset ip arp address <ipv4>.....	95
reset ip arp interface <interface_name>.....	96
set date.....	97
set terminal.....	98
show arp.....	99
show date.....	100
show hardware cpu.....	101
show hardware dmi.....	102
show hardware mem.....	103
show hardware pci.....	104
show history.....	105
show host.....	106
show ip groups.....	108
show interfaces.....	109
show interfaces extensive.....	111
show license.....	113
show ntp.....	114
show ntp packets.....	115
show ntp status.....	116
show ntp information.....	117
show session-table statistics.....	118
show reboot.....	119
show system boot-messages.....	120
show system connections.....	121
show system kernel-messages.....	122
show system memory.....	123
show system power-profile.....	125
show system processes.....	126
show system routing-daemons.....	129
show system storage.....	130
show system uptime.....	131
show system usb.....	132
show tech-support.....	133
show version.....	135
system alg ftp.....	138
system alg icmp disable.....	139
system console device <device>.....	140
system console powersave.....	142
system default dataplane cpu-affinity <cpu-list>.....	143
system domain-name <domain>.....	144
system domain-search domain <domain>.....	145
system host-name <name>.....	146
system name-server <address>.....	147
system ntp server <server-name>.....	148
system power-profile policy <thresholds>.....	150
system power-profile custom <parameter> <threshold>.....	151
system ntp server <server-name> address-family.....	152

system options reboot-on-panic <value>.....	153
system session table-size <size>.....	154
system session timeout custom rule rule-number destination.....	155
system session timeout custom rule rule-number expire.....	156
system session timeout custom rule rule-number protocol.....	157
system session timeout custom rule rule-number source.....	158
system session timeout icmp established.....	159
system session timeout icmp new.....	160
system session timeout other established.....	161
system session timeout other new.....	162
system session timeout tcp close-wait.....	163
system session timeout tcp closed.....	164
system session timeout tcp closing.....	165
system session timeout tcp established.....	166
system session timeout tcp fin-received.....	167
system session timeout tcp fin-sent.....	168
system session timeout tcp fin-wait.....	169
system session timeout tcp last-ack.....	170
system session timeout tcp simsyn-sent.....	171
system session timeout tcp syn-received.....	172
system session timeout tcp syn-sent.....	173
system session timeout tcp time-wait.....	174
system session timeout udp established.....	175
system session timeout udp new.....	176
system static-host-mapping host-name <name>.....	177
system time-zone <zone>.....	178
<b>Role-based Access Control.....</b>	<b>179</b>
Overview.....	179
Path matching.....	179
Default rule set.....	180
Configuration examples.....	181
Example of a rule set in operational mode.....	181
Rule set in operation.....	182
Example of a rule set in configuration mode.....	183
Rule set in operation.....	185
Example of a rule set to create a security group.....	185
Rule set in operation for the security group.....	189
<b>Role-based Access Control Commands.....</b>	<b>191</b>
system acm create-default.....	192
system acm delete-default.....	193
system acm enable.....	194
system acm exec-default.....	195
system acm operational-ruleset rule <number>.....	196
system acm read-default.....	197
system acm ruleset rule <number> action.....	198
system acm ruleset rule <number> group <name>.....	199
system acm ruleset rule <number> log.....	200
system acm ruleset rule <number> operation <action>.....	201
system acm ruleset rule <number> path <path>.....	203

system acm update-default.....	204
<b>User Management.....</b>	<b>205</b>
User management configuration.....	205
User management overview.....	205
Maintenance of SSH public keys of known hosts.....	208
Creating a login user account.....	209
Recovering user passwords.....	211
Configuring a system for a RADIUS authentication server.....	212
Configuring a system for a TACACS+ authentication server.....	213
Configuring a system for SSH access using shared public keys.....	215
<b>User Management Commands.....</b>	<b>217</b>
loadkey.....	218
show login.....	220
show system login users.....	221
show system tacplus status.....	222
system login.....	223
system login banner post-login <banner>.....	224
system login banner pre-login <banner>.....	225
system login group <group-name>.....	226
system login radius-server <address>.....	227
system login session-timeout.....	229
system login tacplus-server <address>.....	230
system login user <user>.....	232
system login user <user> authentication.....	233
system login auth-chain method.....	235
system login user <user> authentication public-keys <key-id>.....	237
system login user <user> full-name <name>.....	239
system login user <user> group <group>.....	240
system login user <user> home-directory <dir>.....	241
system login user <user> level <level>.....	242
system tacplus-options command-accounting.....	244
<b>Service-user Management.....</b>	<b>245</b>
Overview.....	245
Local service user.....	245
Service-user authentication through LDAP.....	247
<b>IPv6.....</b>	<b>251</b>
IPv6 overview.....	251
IPv6 configuration.....	251
<b>IPv6 System Commands.....</b>	<b>253</b>
reset ipv6 neighbors address <ipv6>.....	254
reset ipv6 neighbors interface <interface_name>.....	255
show ipv6 neighbors.....	256
system ipv6 disable.....	257
system ipv6 disable-forwarding.....	258
system ipv6 strict-dad.....	259
<b>Hot-plugging Interfaces.....</b>	<b>261</b>
Overview.....	261

How hot-plugging works on the VMware ESX platform.....	261
How hot-plugging works on the Linux KVM platform.....	262
Hot-plugging Interfaces on the VMware ESX Platform.....	263
Hot-plugging interfaces on the KVM platform.....	263
Creating XML files for hot-plugging interfaces.....	263
Interface hot-plugging examples (KVM).....	266
Commands for attaching and detaching interfaces on the KVM platform.....	269
<b>Logging.....</b>	<b>273</b>
Logging configuration.....	273
Logging overview.....	273
Logging configuration example.....	275
Enabling and disabling logging for specific features.....	275
Overriding the host syslog logging facility for log entries.....	276
<b>Logging Commands.....</b>	<b>277</b>
delete log file.....	278
show log.....	279
show log image <image-name>.....	281
system syslog.....	282
system syslog console facility <facility> level <level>.....	285
system syslog file <filename> archive.....	286
system syslog file <filename> facility <facility> level <level>.....	287
system syslog global archive.....	289
system syslog global facility <facility> level <level>.....	290
system syslog host <hostname> facility <facility> level <level>.....	291
system syslog host <hostname> facility-override <facility>.....	293
system syslog user <userid> facility <facility> level <level>.....	294
<b>Loopback and Data Plane Interfaces.....</b>	<b>295</b>
<b>List of Acronyms.....</b>	<b>297</b>



# Preface

---

- Document conventions..... 9
- Brocade resources..... 10
- Contacting Brocade Technical Support..... 10
- Document feedback..... 11

## Document conventions

The document conventions describe text formatting conventions, command syntax conventions, and important notice formats used in Brocade technical documentation.

## Text formatting conventions

Text formatting conventions such as boldface, italic, or Courier font may be used in the flow of the text to highlight specific words or phrases.

Format	Description
<b>bold text</b>	Identifies command names Identifies keywords and operands Identifies the names of user-manipulated GUI elements
<i>italic text</i>	Identifies text to enter at the GUI Identifies emphasis Identifies variables
Courier font	Identifies document titles Identifies CLI output Identifies command syntax examples

## Command syntax conventions

Bold and italic text identify command syntax components. Delimiters and operators define groupings of parameters and their logical relationships.

Convention	Description
<b>bold text</b>	Identifies command names, keywords, and command options.
<i>italic text</i>	Identifies a variable.
value	In Fibre Channel products, a fixed value provided as input to a command option is printed in plain text, for example, <b>--show</b> WWN.
[ ]	Syntax components displayed within square brackets are optional.
{ x   y   z }	Default responses to system prompts are enclosed in square brackets. A choice of required parameters is enclosed in curly brackets separated by vertical bars. You must select one of the options.
x   y	In Fibre Channel products, square brackets may be used instead for this purpose. A vertical bar separates mutually exclusive elements.
< >	Nonprinting characters, for example, passwords, are enclosed in angle brackets.

Convention	Description
...	Repeat the previous element, for example, <i>member{member...}</i> .
\	Indicates a "soft" line break in command examples. If a backslash separates two lines of a command input, enter the entire command at the prompt without the backslash.

## Notes, cautions, and warnings

Notes, cautions, and warning statements may be used in this document. They are listed in the order of increasing severity of potential hazards.

### NOTE

A Note provides a tip, guidance, or advice, emphasizes important information, or provides a reference to related information.

### ATTENTION

An Attention statement indicates a stronger note, for example, to alert you when traffic might be interrupted or the device might reboot.



### CAUTION

A Caution statement alerts you to situations that can be potentially hazardous to you or cause damage to hardware, firmware, software, or data.



### DANGER

*A Danger statement indicates conditions or situations that can be potentially lethal or extremely hazardous to you. Safety labels are also attached directly to products to warn of these conditions or situations.*

## Brocade resources

Visit the Brocade website to locate related documentation for your product and additional Brocade resources.

You can download additional publications supporting your product at [www.brocade.com](http://www.brocade.com). Select the Brocade Products tab to locate your product, then click the Brocade product name or image to open the individual product page. The user manuals are available in the resources module at the bottom of the page under the Documentation category.

To get up-to-the-minute information on Brocade products and resources, go to [MyBrocade](http://MyBrocade). You can register at no cost to obtain a user ID and password.

Release notes are available on [MyBrocade](http://MyBrocade) under Product Downloads.

White papers, online demonstrations, and data sheets are available through the [Brocade website](http://Brocade website).

## Contacting Brocade Technical Support

As a Brocade customer, you can contact Brocade Technical Support 24x7 online, by telephone, or by e-mail. Brocade OEM customers contact their OEM/Solutions provider.

## Brocade customers

For product support information and the latest information on contacting the Technical Assistance Center, go to <http://www.brocade.com/services-support/index.html>.

If you have purchased Brocade product support directly from Brocade, use one of the following methods to contact the Brocade Technical Assistance Center 24x7.

Online	Telephone	E-mail
Preferred method of contact for non-urgent issues: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">My Cases</a> through MyBrocade</li> <li>• <a href="#">Software downloads</a> and licensing tools</li> <li>• <a href="#">Knowledge Base</a></li> </ul>	Required for Sev 1-Critical and Sev 2-High issues: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continental US: 1-800-752-8061</li> <li>• Europe, Middle East, Africa, and Asia Pacific: +800-AT FIBREE (+800 28 34 27 33)</li> <li>• For areas unable to access toll free number: +1-408-333-6061</li> <li>• <a href="#">Toll-free numbers</a> are available in many countries.</li> </ul>	<a href="mailto:support@brocade.com">support@brocade.com</a> Please include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Problem summary</li> <li>• Serial number</li> <li>• Installation details</li> <li>• Environment description</li> </ul>

## Brocade OEM customers

If you have purchased Brocade product support from a Brocade OEM/Solution Provider, contact your OEM/Solution Provider for all of your product support needs.

- OEM/Solution Providers are trained and certified by Brocade to support Brocade® products.
- Brocade provides backline support for issues that cannot be resolved by the OEM/Solution Provider.
- Brocade Supplemental Support augments your existing OEM support contract, providing direct access to Brocade expertise. For more information, contact Brocade or your OEM.
- For questions regarding service levels and response times, contact your OEM/Solution Provider.

## Document feedback

To send feedback and report errors in the documentation you can use the feedback form posted with the document or you can e-mail the documentation team.

Quality is our first concern at Brocade and we have made every effort to ensure the accuracy and completeness of this document. However, if you find an error or an omission, or you think that a topic needs further development, we want to hear from you. You can provide feedback in two ways:

- Through the online feedback form in the HTML documents posted on [www.brocade.com](http://www.brocade.com).
- By sending your feedback to [documentation@brocade.com](mailto:documentation@brocade.com).

Provide the publication title, part number, and as much detail as possible, including the topic heading and page number if applicable, as well as your suggestions for improvement.



# About This Guide

---

This guide describes the architecture of the Brocade 5600 vRouter (referred to as a virtual router, vRouter, or router in the guide) and basic system concepts. It also describes how to use the CLI of the router, perform basic system management and monitoring tasks, manage user accounts, access system logs, and hot-plug interfaces.



# Brocade vRouter Architecture

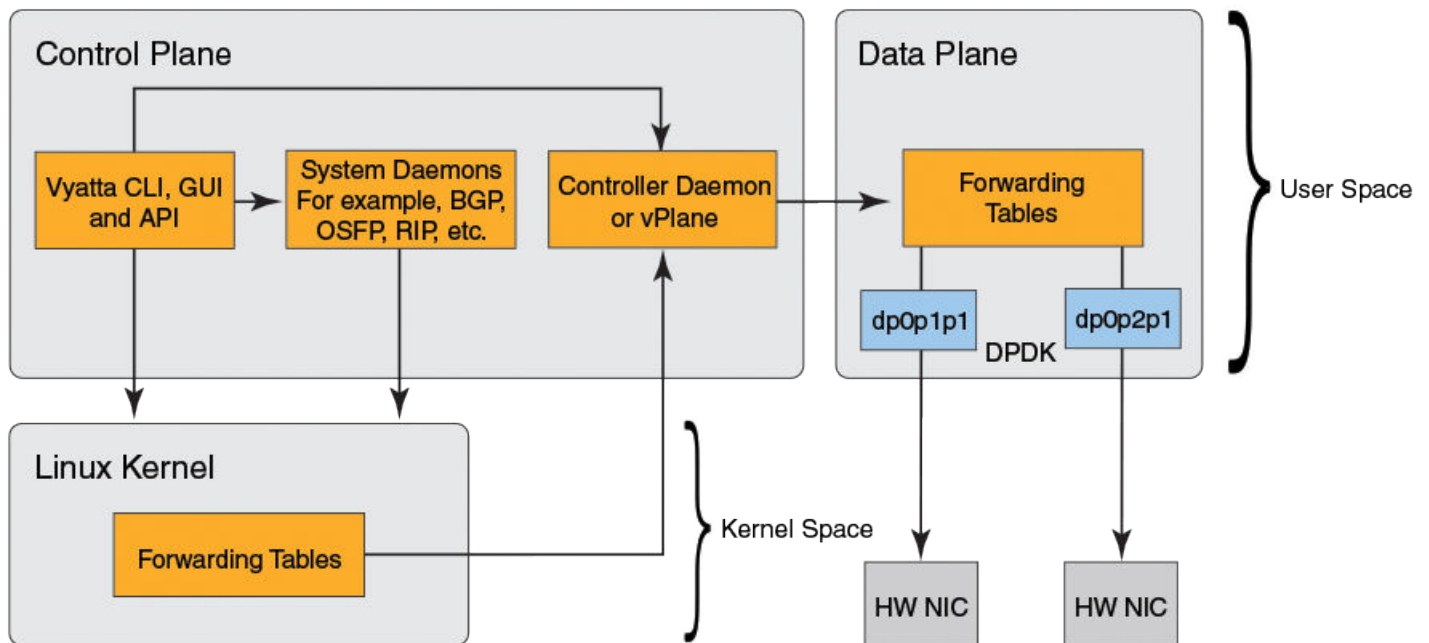
This chapter provides a brief overview of the architecture of the Brocade 5600 vRouter.

The Brocade vRouter employs the innovative Brocade vPlane™ technology that enables hardware-like routing performance in a software-based network appliance. The Brocade vPlane technology is based on the Brocade Vyatta vPlane architecture, which consists of the following main components:

- Control Plane: Carries signaling traffic and manages configuration and protocol operations. It also serves the data plane. The control plane consists of the following components:
  - Vyatta CLI, API, and GUI—provide the user interfaces to the router
  - System daemons—provide control plane services such as BGP, DHCP, OSPF, RIP, and SNMP
  - Controller daemon—provides the data plane interface to the Linux kernel and CLI, and manages the data plane
- Data Plane: Forwards traffic between ports and passes local traffic to the controller. The data plane consists of the following components:
  - Data plane daemon—provides packet forwarding, QoS, and firewall services
  - User space I/O drivers—provide network interface
- Linux kernel: Hosts the data plane and other user space processes

Figure 1 shows the Brocade Vyatta vPlane architecture and its various components.

FIGURE 1 Brocade Vyatta vplane architecture



Traditionally, packet processing in Linux has run in the kernel space. However, with the vPlane architecture, packet processing is run in the Linux user space. Using the vPlane architecture and leveraging the Intel® Data Plane Development Kit (Intel® DPDK), the Brocade

vRouter delivers breakthrough levels of performance. Depending on configuration, one or two cores are dedicated to each interface that allow for the ability to run the core or cores at 100-percent efficiency when processing packets, thereby allowing the router to reach an order of magnitude performance scale on it.



# Using the CLI

---

- [CLI features](#).....17
- [Operational commands](#).....25

This chapter provides an overview of the Vyatta command-line interface (CLI), which is the primary user interface to the Brocade vRouter, and the operational mode of the CLI.

Note: Configuration by using the CLI is discussed in [Working with Configuration](#) on page 35.

## CLI features

This section presents the following topics:

- [Command modes](#) on page 17
- [Vyatta CLI and system shell](#) on page 18
- [Accessing the CLI](#) on page 18
- [The predefined user account](#) on page 19
- [User privilege levels](#) on page 19
- [Command prompts](#) on page 20
- [Using special characters in commands](#) on page 20
- [Command completion](#) on page 21
- [Command history](#) on page 23
- [Command editing](#) on page 23
- [Filtering command output](#) on page 24
- [Running operational commands](#) on page 25
- [Running an operational command in configuration mode](#) on page 25

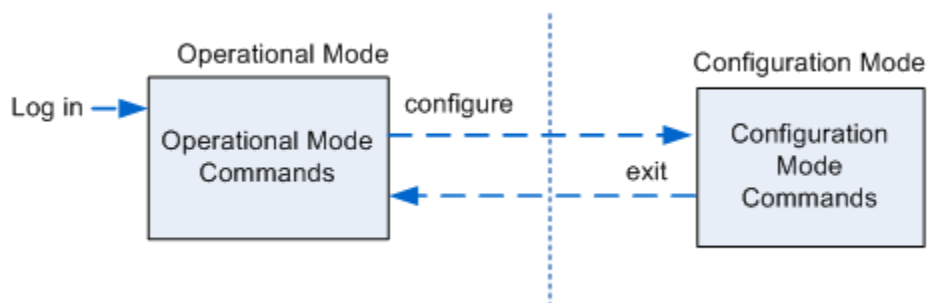
## Command modes

The Vyatta CLI has two command modes: operational mode and configuration mode.

Operational mode provides access to operational commands for showing and clearing information and enabling or disabling debugging, as well as commands for configuring terminal settings, loading and saving configuration, and restarting the system. When you log in to the system, the system is in operational mode.

[Figure 2](#) shows Vyatta CLI command modes.

FIGURE 2 CLI command modes



Configuration mode provides access to commands for creating, modifying, deleting, committing and showing configuration information and commands for navigating through the configuration hierarchy.

- To enter configuration mode from operational mode, enter the **configure** command.
- To return to operational mode from configuration mode, enter the **exit** command. If uncommitted changes remain, you must either commit the changes, by using the **commit** command, or discard the changes, by using the **discard** command (or **exit discard**), before you can exit to operational mode. If you have not saved the configuration (by using the **save** command) you are warned that configuration changes have not been saved. When the system is restarted, it loads the last saved configuration.

Entering the **exit** command in operational mode logs you off the system.

## Vyatta CLI and system shell

The CLI of the Brocade vRouter includes two kinds of commands:

- Commands for operating and configuring the Brocade vRouter
- Commands provided by the operating system shell in which the Vyatta CLI operates

The commands you can execute depend on your user role and its privileges. However, any command for which you have the privileges to execute, including operating system commands, can be executed from within the Vyatta CLI.

## Accessing the CLI

To access the CLI, you log in to the Brocade vRouter, either directly through the VGA console, a serial console, or remotely by using a Secure Shell (SSH) or Telnet session. The VGA console also provides nine virtual console sessions. These virtual consoles (tty1 through tty9) can be accessed by using the key combinations ALT-F1 (for tty1) through ALT-F9 (for tty9). tty1 through tty6 provide a login prompt. tty7 through tty9 are not used.

Regardless of the access method you choose, after the startup messages are completed, the login prompt appears, as follows:

```
vyatta login:
```

Log in by using the ID and password of a defined user account.

### NOTE

You can change user accounts by using operating system commands, but the changes do not persist across reboots. For persistent changes to user account information, use the Vyatta CLI.

## The predefined user account

By default, the system has one predefined user account: the vyatta user. The default password for the vyatta account is vyatta. The vyatta user has administrator-level privileges and can execute all Brocade vRouter commands and all operating system commands. Note that, although the user can execute both Brocade vRouter commands and operating system commands, command completion and CLI help show only Brocade vRouter commands for clarity.

## User privilege levels

The Brocade vRouter supports two user roles:

- [Admin users](#) on page 19
- [Operator users](#) on page 19

### Admin users

Administrator (admin) users have full access to the Vyatta CLI. Admin users can view, configure, and delete information and execute all Brocade vRouter operational commands. Admin users can also execute all operating system shell commands and constructs.

The vyatta default user is an admin user.

To create an admin user, enter the following set of commands in configuration mode.

```
vyatta@vyatta# set system login user user-name level admin
vyatta@vyatta# set system login user user-name authentication plaintext-password password
vyatta@vyatta# commit
```

where *user-name* is the ID of the user account you want to create and *password* is the password you are assigning to the user.

Although operating system shell commands are always available to admin users, they are not shown when these users employ command completion to query the CLI for available commands. This is because there are several hundred operating system shell commands and constructs available at any time: showing all available operating system shell commands makes it very difficult to distinguish available CLI commands.

Admin users can see available commands by entering **help** at the command prompt.

You can remove the restriction on command completion by setting the VYATTA\_RESTRICTED\_MODE environment variable to none:

```
export VYATTA_RESTRICTED_MODE=none
```

This setting removes the restriction on command completion for all users, regardless of privilege level.

### Operator users

Operator users have read-only access to configuration plus the ability to execute Brocade vRouter operational commands. Operator users can view in operational mode (by using **show** commands), configure their terminal settings (by using the **set terminal** command), and exit from the Vyatta CLI (by using the **exit** command). Operator users cannot enter configuration mode; however, they can display configuration by entering the **show configuration** command in operational mode.

Basic commands for displaying information (for example, **show configuration** plus the **pipe** commands, such as **more**, for managing display output) are available. Commands that use control constructs (such as **if**, **for**, and **so on**), list operators (such as **:**, **&&**, and **so on**), and redirection are not available to operator users.

To create an operator user, enter the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set system login user user-name level operator
vyatta@vyatta# set system login user user-name authentication plaintext-password password
vyatta@vyatta# commit
```

where *user-name* is the ID of the user account you are creating and *password* is the password you are assigning to the user.

Operating system shell commands are not available to operator users and, consequently, the list of commands returned by using command completion for operator-level users is restricted to Brocade vRouter commands.

You can remove the restriction on command completion by setting the VYATTA\_RESTRICTED\_MODE environment variable to none, as follows:

```
export VYATTA_RESTRICTED_MODE=none
```

This setting removes the restriction on command completion for all users, regardless of privilege level.

## Command prompts

The command prompt shows you the user account under which you are logged in, the host name of the system you are logged in to, and whether you are in configuration mode or operational mode.

The format of the command prompt in configuration mode is as follows:

```
username@hostname#
```

The format of the command prompt in operational mode is as follows:

```
username@hostname:~$
```

where, in both cases, *username* is the user account under which you are logged in and *hostname* is the host name configured for the system; see [Table 1](#) for examples.

**TABLE 1** Command prompts

The prompt shows this	And means this
vyatta@R1:~\$	User: vyatta Hostname: R1 Command mode: Operational mode
vyatta@R1#	User: vyatta Hostname: R1 Command mode: Configuration mode

## Using special characters in commands

The Vyatta FusionCLI management interface is based on the GNU Bash shell. When entering a command at the command prompt, keep in mind that some characters have special meaning to the shell. For example, one such special character is the space character, which denotes the end of a token in a command, as shown below.

```
prompt> show interfaces dataplane
```

In this example, the space characters separate the command line into three components: **show**, **interfaces**, and **dataplane**.

If you want to enter a string of characters that includes a literal character understood by the shell as a special character, you must enclose the character in double quotation marks ("). For example, if you want to enter a character string that includes a space, you must enclose the string in double quotation marks, as shown below.

```
vyatta@vyatta# set security firewall name TEST description "external inbound"
```

In this example, the space within the character string `external inbound` is within quotation marks and, therefore, loses its special meaning as a token separator.

Another example of a special character is the "pipe" character, also called the vertical bar (|), which separates two commands and means that the output of the command to the left of the pipe should be processed by using the command to the right of the pipe, as shown in the following example.

```
vyatta@vyatta# show interfaces | match dp
```

In this example, the pipe character tells the shell to run the **show interfaces** command and then process the output by using the **match dp** command; as a result, only lines that contain the `dp` character string are displayed. As for the space character, if you want a literal vertical bar in a command component, you must enclose it in double quotation marks.

In addition to the space and vertical bar, the following characters have special meaning for the shell.

- ampersand (&)
- semicolon (;)
- comma (,)
- left parenthesis (()
- right parenthesis ())
- left angle bracket (<)
- right angle bracket (>)
- backslash (\)
- pound sign (#)

In general, if you are unsure which characters are special, a good rule of thumb is to enclose anything that is not alphanumeric within double quotation marks.

Note that within a quotation-enclosed string, you can include a literal quotation mark by preceding it with a backslash, as shown in the following example.

```
"some \"quotes\" within quotes"
```

Of course, the rules become more complex if you want a literal backslash (\). As a general rule, try to avoid using quotation marks or backslashes as literal configuration values.

## Command completion

To save keystrokes, the system accepts unambiguous command prefixes in place of the full command. For example, typing **sh configu** in operational mode is equivalent to typing **show configuration**.

You can also have the system automatically complete a command syntax by entering or pressing any of the following at the command prompt.

**TABLE 2** CLI help keystrokes

Enter or press this:	To display this:
<Tab>	Automatic completion of a command.

TABLE 2 CLI help keystrokes (continued)

Enter or press this:	To display this:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the command is unambiguous, the system generates the next token in the syntax.</li> <li>If more than one completion is possible, the system displays the set of possible tokens. Pressing &lt;Tab&gt; a second time displays command help for each possible token.</li> </ul> <p>(Note that the space following a command or keyword counts as a token.)</p>
? or <Alt>-?	<p>The set of possible tokens. Pressing ? a second time displays command help for each possible token.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b> To enter a literal question mark, first enter &lt;Ctrl&gt;+v, then the question mark.</p>

The following example shows how to find all available commands.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ <Tab>
```

The following example shows how to request command completion for the **sh** entered character string. In this example, the command to be completed is unambiguous.

```
vyatta@R1~$ sh<Tab>
```

```
vyatta@R1~$ show
```

The following example shows how to request command completion for the **s** entered character string. In this case, more than one command can complete the entry and the system lists all valid completions.

```
vyatta@R1~$:s<Tab>
```

```
set          show
```

Note that neither the <Tab> key nor the <Alt>+? key combination provides a help function when enclosed in double quotation marks. When used within double quotation marks, the <Tab> key generates a tab character and the <Alt>+? key combination generates a question mark (?) character.

In configuration mode, the following symbols are displayed next to nodes in their completion help text to indicate the node type.

Symbol	Node
+	Multinode
>	Nonleaf node
+>	Tag node (multiple nonleaf)

The following example shows the node symbols next to possible completions for the **interfaces dataplane** command.

```
vyatta@vyatta:~$ configure
[edit]
vyatta@vyatta# set interfaces dataplane dp0p0p1
<Tab>
Possible Completions:
  <Enter>      Execute the current command
+ address      IP address
```

```

> bridge-group      Add this interface to a bridge group
  description      Description
> dhcpv6-options   DHCPv6 options
  disable          Disable interface
  disable-link-detect Ignore link state changes
> firewall         Firewall options
> flow-monitoring  Flow-Monitoring configuration for interface
> ip              <No help text available>
> ipv6            IPv6 parameters
  log_martians     Enable the logging of bogus packets
  mac             Media Access Control (MAC) address
  mtu             Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU)
> policy          PBR Options
  qos-policy      Qos policy for interface
  sflow          Enable/Disable sflow for interface
+> vif           Virtual Interface (VIF) ID
> vrrp           Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP)
> xconnect       Specify the parameters for cross-connect

```

## Command history

The Brocade vRouter shell supports a command history in which the commands that you run are stored in an internal buffer and can be run or edited.

Table 3 shows the most important history keystrokes.

**TABLE 3** Command history keystrokes

Type this	To do this
<Up Arrow> <Control>-p	Move to the previous command.
<Down Arrow> <Control>-n	Move to the next command.

## Command editing

The Brocade vRouter shell supports Emacs-style command editing.

Table 4 shows the most important editing keystrokes.

**TABLE 4** Command-line editing keystrokes

Type this	To do this
<Left Arrow> <Control>-b	Move backward in the command line.
<Right Arrow> <Control>-f	Move forward in the command line.
<Control>-a	Move to the beginning of the command line.
<Control>-e	Move to the end of the command line.
<Control>-d	Delete the character directly under the cursor.
<Control>-t	Toggle (swap) the character under the cursor with the character immediately preceding it.
<Control>-<Space>	Mark the current cursor position.

**TABLE 4** Command-line editing keystrokes (continued)

Type this	To do this
<Control>-w	Delete the text between the mark and the current cursor position, copying the deleted text to the cut buffer.
<Control>-k	"Kill" (delete) from the cursor to the end of the line, copying the deleted text into the cut buffer.
<Control>-y	"Yank" (paste) from the cut buffer into the command line, inserting it at the cursor location.

If the information being displayed is too long for your screen, the screen shows the "more" indication where the information breaks.

Table 5 shows the keystrokes for controlling the display of information in a "more" screen.

**TABLE 5** Display options within a "more" screen

Type this	To do this
q Q	Exit "more."
<Space> f <Ctrl>+f	Scroll down one whole screen.
b <Ctrl>+b	Scroll up one whole screen.
d <Ctrl>+d	Scroll down one-half screen.
u <Ctrl>+u	Scroll up one-half screen.
<Enter> e <Ctrl>+e <Down Arrow>	Scroll down one line.
y <Ctrl>+y <Up Arrow>	Scroll up one line.
G	Scroll down to the bottom of the output.
g	Scroll up to the top of the output.
h	Display detailed help for "more."

## Filtering command output

The Brocade vRouter can pipe the output of commands into selected operating system shell commands to filter what is displayed on the console. Commands are piped into the filters by using the pipe, or vertical bar, operator (|).

Table 6 shows the pipe commands implemented for the Brocade vRouter.



TABLE 6 "pipe" filter commands

Type this:	To do this:
<b>count</b>	Count occurrences.
<b>match</b> <i>pattern</i>	Show only text that matches the specified pattern.
<b>more</b>	Paginate output.
<b>no-match</b> <i>pattern</i>	Show only text that does not match the specified pattern.
<b>no-more</b>	Do not paginate output.

## Operational commands

This section presents the following topics:

- [Running operational commands](#) on page 25
- [Running an operational command in configuration mode](#) on page 25

## Running operational commands

Operational commands are run in operational mode. The operational commands available to you can be displayed by entering **help** at the command prompt in operational mode.

## Running an operational command in configuration mode

You can run an operational command without leaving configuration mode by using the **run** command, as in the following example.

```
vyatta@R1# run show system processes summary
 20:45:46 up 1 day, 10:16, 3 users, load average: 0.00, 0.00, 0.00
vyatta@R1#
```



# Basic commands for using the CLI

- `copy file <from-file> to <to-file>`.....27
- `delete file <file>`.....29
- `exit (operational)`.....30
- `run`.....31
- `show file <file>`.....32

## copy file <from-file> to <to-file>

Copies a file or directory.

### Syntax

**copy file** *from-file* **to** *to-file*

### Parameters

#### from-file

The source file or directory.

#### to-file

The destination file or directory.

### Modes

Operational mode.

### Usage Guidelines

This command is optimized for configuration files and directories in that command completion refers to the `/config` directory of all known system images. For example, `running://config/` indicates the `/config` directory of the currently running system, and `test-image1://config/` indicates the `/config` directory of an image called `test-image1`. If needed, however, any other location within the file system can be specified.

A file or directory can be copied on the local machine. Only a file can be copied to and from the remote machine by using FTP, SCP, or TFTP.

#### NOTE

Use this command with caution because its effects are not reversible.

The following table shows how to specify different types of file locations.

**TABLE 7** Specifying file locations

Location	Specification
FTP server	<code>ftp://user:passwd@host/file</code> where <code>user</code> is the username on the host, <code>passwd</code> is the password associated with the username, <code>host</code> is the host name or IP address of the FTP server, and <code>file</code> is the file, including the path. If you do not specify <code>user</code> and <code>passwd</code> , the system prompts you for them.

TABLE 7 Specifying file locations (continued)

Location	Specification
SCP server	<code>scp://user:passwd@host/file</code> where <code>user</code> is the username on the host, <code>passwd</code> is the password associated with the username, <code>host</code> is the host name or IP address of the SCP server, and <code>file</code> is the file, including the path. If you do not specify <code>user</code> and <code>passwd</code> , the system prompts you for them.
TFTP server	<code>tftp://host/file</code> where <code>host</code> is the host name or IP address of the TFTP server, and <code>file</code> is the file, including the path relative to the TFTP root directory. The running (active) configuration running: <code>running://path/file</code> where <code>path</code> is the path to the file, and <code>file</code> is the file.
A binary image	<code>image-name://path/file</code> where <code>image-name</code> is the name of a binary image, <code>path</code> is the path to the file, and <code>file</code> is the file.

## Examples

The following example shows how to copy the contents of the `/config/x509/` directory on the currently running system to the `/config/x509/` directory of the TEST-IMAGE-1 image.

```
vyatta@vyatta:~$ copy file running://config/auth/x509/ to TEST-IMAGE-1://config/auth/x509/
sending incremental file list
created directory /live/image/boot/TEST-IMAGE-1/live-rw/config/x509
./
ca.crt
 1265 100%   0.00kB/s   0:00:00 (xfer#1, to-check=5/7)
crl.pem
  568 100% 554.69kB/s   0:00:00 (xfer#2, to-check=4/7)
key
  5626 100%   5.37MB/s   0:00:00 (xfer#3, to-check=3/7)
straylight-rl.crt
  3632 100%   3.46MB/s   0:00:00 (xfer#4, to-check=2/7)
straylight-rl.key
  891 100%  870.12kB/s   0:00:00 (xfer#5, to-check=1/7)
test.key
  401 100%  391.60kB/s   0:00:00 (xfer#6, to-check=0/7)

sent 12808 bytes  received 129 bytes  25874.00 bytes/sec
total size is 12383  speedup is 0.96
vyatta@vyatta:~$
```

## delete file <file>

Deletes a file or directory.

### Syntax

**delete file** *file*

### Parameters

**file**

A file or directory to delete, including the path.

### Modes

Operational mode.

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to delete a file or directory.

This command is optimized for configuration files and directories in that command completion refers to the `/config` directory of all known system images. For example, `running://config/` indicates the `/config` directory of the currently running system, and `test-image1://config/` indicates the `/config` directory of an image called `test-image1`. If needed, however, any other location within the file system can be specified.

#### NOTE

Use this command with caution because its effects are not reversible.

### Examples

This example shows how to delete the `/config/user-data/xxx` file from the currently running system.

```
vyatta@vyatta:~$ delete file running://config/user-data/xxx
Do you want to erase the running://config/user-data/xxx file? (Y/N): y
File erased
vyatta@vyatta:~$
```

## exit (operational)

Exits the system.

### Syntax

**exit**

### Modes

Operational mode.

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command in operational mode to exit the system.

## run

Runs an operational command without leaving configuration mode.

## Syntax

`run command`

## Parameters

### **command**

An operational command to be run.

## Modes

Configuration mode.

## Usage Guidelines

This example shows how to run the show date command (an operational command) from configuration mode.

```
vyatta@vyatta# run show date
Sun Dec 16 23:34:06 GMT 2007
vyatta@vyatta#
```

## show file <file>

Displays information about a file or directory.

## Syntax

**show file** *file*

## Parameters

**file**

A file or directory about which to display information.

## Modes

Operational mode.

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display information about a file or directory.

This command is optimized for configuration files and directories in that command completion refers to the `/config` directory of all known system images. For example, `running://config/` indicates the `/config` directory of the currently running system, and `test-image1://config/` indicates the `/config` directory of an image called `test-image1`. If needed, however, any other location within the file system can be specified.

Different information is displayed for various file types, as shown in the following table.

**TABLE 8** Types of information displayed for various file types

File Type	Information Displayed
Directory	Directory contents
Text file	Information about the file and file contents
Packet capture file (*.pcap)	Information about the file and file contents in the form of a packet capture from tshark
Binary file	Information about the file and file contents in the form of a hexadecimal dump

## Examples

The following example shows how to display the contents of the `/config` directory on the currently running system.

```
vyatta@vyatta:~$ show file running://config
##### DIRECTORY LISTING #####
total 36K
drwxrwsr-x 1 root 4.0K Mar 21 17:21 archive/
drwxrwsr-x 1 root 4.0K Mar 21 07:56 auth/
drwxrwsr-x 1 root 4.0K Mar 21 07:56 scripts/
drwxrwsr-x 1 root 4.0K Mar 21 07:56 support/
drwxr-sr-x 1 root 4.0K Mar 21 07:57 url-filtering/
drwxrwsr-x 1 root 4.0K Mar 21 07:56 user-data/
-rwxrwxr-x 1 root 1.9K Mar 21 17:21 config.boot
-rwxrwxr-x 1 root 4.2K Mar 20 17:14 webgui2_default_config.boot
vyatta@vyatta:~$
```



## Examples

This example shows how to display partial contents of the `/tmp/test1.pcap` file on the currently running system.

```
vyatta@vyatta:~$ show file running://tmp/test1.pcap
##### FILE INFO #####
Binary File:
  Permissions: -rw-----
  Owner:      root
  Size:      35K
  Modified:   Apr 24 19:41
  Description: tcpdump capture file (little-endian) -
version 2.4 (dataplane, capture length 65535)

##### FILE DATA #####
1  0.000000 192.168.56.101 -> 192.168.56.1 SSH Encrypted response
packet len=128
2  0.000155 192.168.56.1 -> 192.168.56.101 TCP 54566 > ssh [ACK]
Seq=1 Ack=129 Win=1002 Len=0 TSV=186250939 TSER=21591709
3  0.259966 192.168.56.101 -> 192.168.56.1 SSH Encrypted response
packet len=48
4  0.260216 192.168.56.1 -> 192.168.56.101 TCP 54566 > ssh [ACK]
Seq=1 Ack=177 Win=1002 Len=0 TSV=186251199 TSER=21591735
...
```

## Examples

This example shows how to display partial contents of the `/config/r1.tar` file on the currently running system.

```
vyatta@vyatta:~$ show file running://config/r1.tar
File Name: running://config/r1.tar
Binary File:
  Permissions: -rwxrwxr-x
  Owner:      vyatta
  Size:      20K
  Modified:   Feb 6 23:09
  Description: POSIX tar archive (GNU)

##### FILE DATA #####
00000000 72 31 2f 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 |r1/.....|
00000010 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 00 |.....|
*
...
```



# Working with Configuration

---

- [Configuration basics](#)..... 35
- [Changing configuration information](#)..... 39
- [Managing system configuration](#)..... 41

This chapter describes utilities for configuration management on the Brocade vRouter.

## Configuration basics

This section presents the following topics:

- [Terminology](#) on page 35
- [Location of configuration information](#) on page 36
- [Configuration hierarchy](#) on page 37
- [Entering and exiting configuration mode](#) on page 37
- [Navigating in configuration mode](#) on page 37
- [Viewing configuration](#) on page 38
- [Viewing configuration from operational mode](#) on page 39

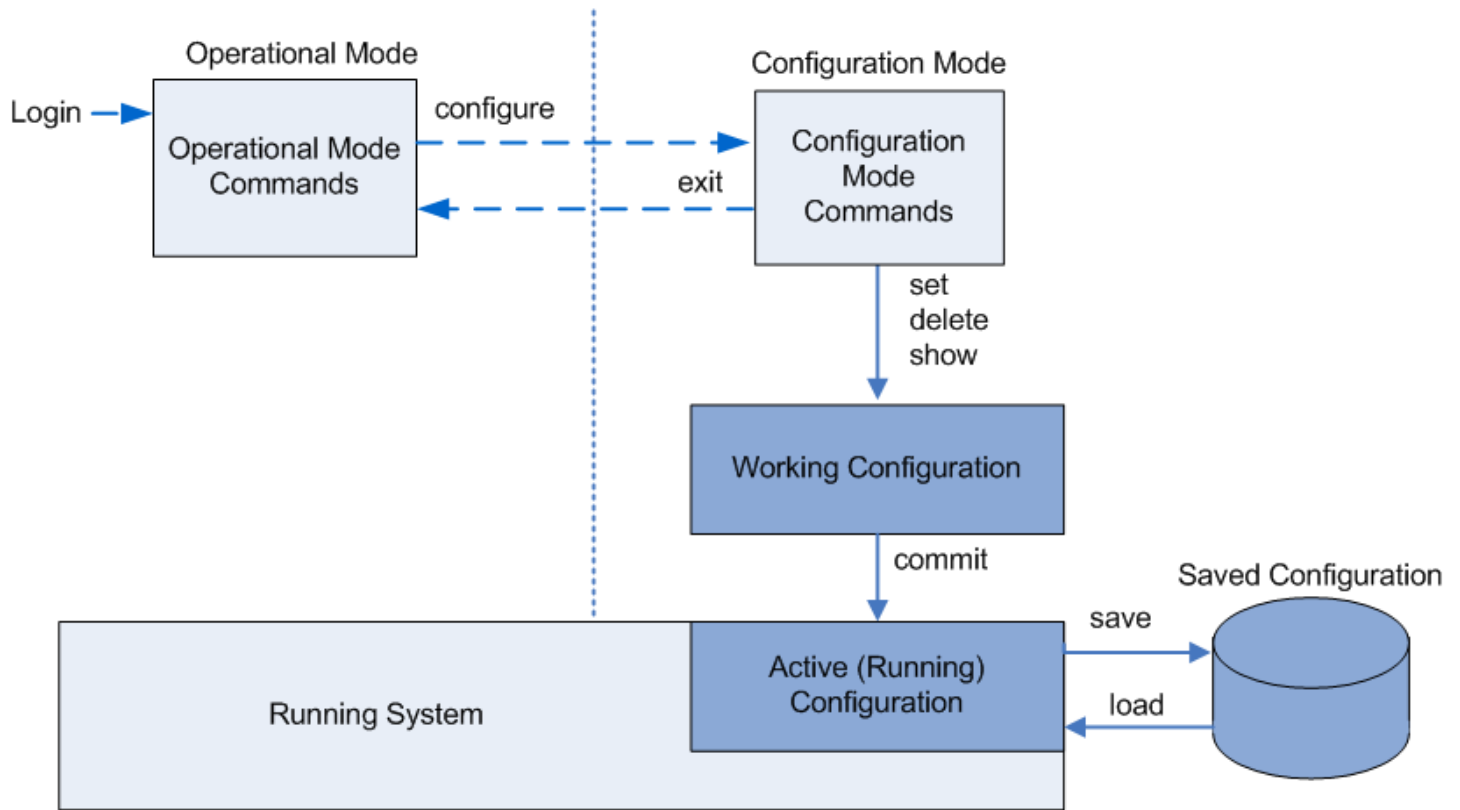
## Terminology

Several versions of system configuration information exist on the system at a given time.

- Active or “running” configuration. This configuration is the one that is loaded and being used by the system.
- Working configuration. When you enter configuration mode and make configuration changes, changes remain in working configuration until you commit the changes, at which time the configuration becomes active or running.
- Saved or “boot” configuration. If you save configuration (by using the **save** command), it is saved to the `config.boot` file in the `/config` directory of the local system. When you reboot, the system reads and loads the configuration from `config.boot`.

[Figure 3](#) shows configuration states possible in the Vyatta CLI.

FIGURE 3 CLI configuration states



## Location of configuration information

Boot configuration is stored in the `config.boot` file in the `/config` directory. In addition to the `config.boot` file, the `/config` directory has a number of subdirectories, each with a specific function, as follows:

- `archive`. This directory stores archived versions of configuration.
- `auth`. This directory stores security certificates referenced in the configuration tree; for example, OpenVPN certificates, IPsec certificates, and RSA/IPsec keys. You can add additional structure to this directory—for example, to store X.509 certificates, you can add an `/auth/x509` directory. To ensure smooth upgrades, and to preserve this kind of information across upgrades, make certain that any certificate file you reference within a configuration node is stored here.
- `scripts`. This directory stores scripts referenced from within the configuration nodes; for example, VRRP transition scripts. To ensure smooth upgrades, and to preserve this kind of information across upgrades, make certain that any script file you reference within a configuration node is stored here.
- `support`. This directory stores system information generated by the `show tech-support save` command.
- `url-filtering`. This directory stores the URL-filtering database and files on which web proxy and URL filtering depend.
- `user-data`. This directory stores user-generated scripts and user data. To ensure smooth upgrades, make certain that any user data that needs to be preserved across upgrades is stored here.

You can freely use the `user-data` subdirectory to store any of your own information you want to preserve across system upgrades. The other subdirectories, including `auth` and `scripts`, contain information on which system operation relies, and you should make changes to them only with great care.

## Configuration hierarchy

Brocade vRouter configuration is organized as a hierarchy of configuration statements, with a hierarchical tree of nodes similar to the directory structure on a UNIX file system. Three kinds of statements exist:

- Configuration nodes. These nodes can be either:
  - Single nodes (just one instance can be created; for example, the rip protocol node)
  - Multinodes (more than one instance can be created; for example, address nodes)
- Attribute statements. These statements set the values or characteristics for parameters within a node.

From a system perspective, a configuration node is different from a simple configuration attribute statement. A configuration attribute statement takes the form *attribute value*, as in the following example.

```
protocol-version v2
```

A configuration node always has an enclosing pair of braces, which may be empty, as in the following example.

```
service {
  https{}
}
```

or nonempty, as in the following example.

```
ssh {
  allow-root
}
```

## Entering and exiting configuration mode

To enter configuration mode, use the **configure** command in operational mode.

```
Entering configuration mode
vyatta@vyatta:~$ configure
vyatta@vyatta#
```

Once in configuration mode, the command prompt changes from this

```
user@host:~$
```

to this:

```
user@host#
```

To exit configuration mode, use the **exit** command from the top level of configuration.

If you have changed configuration, you must either commit changes by using the **commit** command or discard them by using the **exit discard** command.

## Navigating in configuration mode

You can tell where you are in the configuration tree by the [edit] prompt, which is context sensitive.

At the top of the configuration tree, the [edit] prompt looks like this:

```
[edit]
```

When you are in another location, the edit prompt indicates your location by showing the node hierarchy in order, like this:

```
[edit protocols bgp 65537]
```

Table 9 shows the commands for navigating in configuration mode.

**TABLE 9** Commands for navigating in configuration mode

Command	Result
<b>edit</b> <i>config-node</i>	Navigates to the specified configuration node for editing. The node must already be created the configuration committed.
<b>exit</b>	Jumps to the top of the configuration tree. If you are already at the top of the configuration tree, exit from configuration mode and return to operational mode.
<b>top</b>	Jumps to the top of the configuration tree.
<b>up</b>	Moves up one node in the configuration tree.

Using the **edit** command lets you navigate to the part of the hierarchy in which you are interested and run commands relative to your location. This navigation saves typing if you need to work on a particular part of the configuration hierarchy.

The following example shows how to navigate to the configuration node for the dpOp1p3 data plane interface. After you have navigated to the node, you can show configuration directly without specifying the full path.

```
vyatta@R1# edit interfaces dataplane dp0p1p2
[edit interfaces dataplane dp0p1p2]
vyatta@R1# show
  hw-id 00:13:46:e6:f6:87
[edit interfaces dataplane dp0p1p3]
vyatta@R1#
```

## Viewing configuration

Use the **show** command in configuration mode to display configuration. You can restrict the display to a particular node by specifying the path to the node.

The following example shows how to display configuration for all configured interfaces.

```
vyatta@R1# show interfaces
  dataplane dp0p1p1 {
    address 10.1.0.62/24
    hw-id 00:40:63:e2:e4:00
  }
  dataplane dp0p1p2 {
    address 172.16.234.23/25
    hw-id 00:40:63:e2:e3:dd
    vrrp {
      virtual-address 172.16.99.99
      vrrp-group 20
    }
  }
  loopback lo {
  }
}
```

The following example shows how to display configuration for only the dpOp1p1 data plane interface.

```
vyatta@R1# show interfaces dataplane dp0p1p1
address 10.1.0.62/24
hw-id 00:40:63:e2:e4:00
```

When the display is too large for one screen, the display stops after one screen is shown. In this case, press one of the following keys to perform the indicated action.

- <Enter> to display the next line

- <Space> to display the next screen
- <q> to interrupt the display and return to the command prompt

## Viewing configuration from operational mode

You can display configuration information without leaving operational mode by using the **show configuration** command, as in the following example.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show configuration
interfaces {
  dataplane dp0p1p1 {
    address 192.168.1.77/24
    hw-id 00:0c:29:68:b3:9f
  }
  dataplane dp0p1p2 {
    hw-id 00:0c:29:68:b3:a9
  }
  loopback lo {
  }
}
service {
  ssh {
  }
}
```

## Changing configuration information

This section presents the following topics:

- [Adding or modifying configuration](#) on page 39
- [Deleting configuration](#) on page 40
- [Committing configuration changes](#) on page 40
- [Discarding configuration changes](#) on page 41

## Adding or modifying configuration

Add new configuration by creating a configuration node by using the **set** command in configuration mode. Modify existing configuration by using the **set** command in configuration mode, as in the following example.

```
vyatta@R1# set interfaces dataplane dp0p1p3 address 192.168.1.100/24
vyatta@R1#
```

Then use the **show** command to see the change.

```
vyatta@R1# show interfaces dataplane dp0p1p3
+address 192.168.1.100/24
hw-id 00:13:46:e6:f6:87
vyatta@R1#
```

Notice the plus sign (+) in front of the new statement. This + shows that this statement has been added to the configuration, but the change is not yet committed. The change does not take effect until configuration is committed by using the **commit** command.

Another option is to use the **compare** command to see the change.

```
vyatta@R1# compare
[edit interfaces dataplane dp0p1p3]
+address 192.168.1.100/24
vyatta@R1#
```

You can change configuration from the root of the configuration tree or use the **edit** command to navigate to the part of the tree where you want to modify or add configuration.

The configuration tree is nearly empty when you first start up, except for a few automatically configured nodes. You must create a node for any functionality you want to configure on the system. When a node is created, any default values that exist for its attributes are applied to the node.

## Deleting configuration

Use the **delete** command to delete a configuration statement or a complete configuration node, as in the following example.

```
vyatta@R1# delete interfaces dataplane dp0p1p2 address 192.168.1.100/24
```

Then use the **show** command to see the change.

```
vyatta@R1# show interfaces dataplane dp0p1p3
-address 192.168.1.100/24
 hw-id 00:13:46:e6:f6:87
vyatta@R1#
```

Notice the minus sign (-) in front of the deleted statement. This - shows that this statement has been deleted from the configuration, but the change is not yet committed. The change does not take effect until configuration is committed by using the **commit** command.

Another option is to use the **compare** command to see the change.

```
vyatta@R1# compare
[edit interfaces dataplane dp0p1p3]
-address 192.168.1.100/24
vyatta@R1#
```

Some configuration nodes are mandatory; these nodes cannot be deleted. Some configuration nodes are mandatory but have default values; if you delete one of these nodes, the default value is restored.

## Committing configuration changes

In the Brocade vRouter, configuration changes do not take effect until you commit them by using the **commit** command.

```
vyatta@R1# commit
```

Lines that contain uncommitted changes are flagged as follows:

- > to indicate the line has been modified
- + to indicate the line has been added
- - to indicate the line has been deleted

After you commit the changes, the flag disappears, as in the following example.

```
vyatta@R1# show interfaces dataplane dp0p1p3
-address 192.168.1.100/24
 hw-id 00:13:46:e6:f6:87
vyatta@R1# commit
vyatta@R1# show interfaces dataplane dp0p1p3
 hw-id 00:13:46:e6:f6:87
vyatta@R1#
```

### NOTE

When you commit your changes in the configuration mode, there may be daemon-specific start and stop messages that are displayed. These messages are dependent on the configuration being changed.



**CAUTION**

If your login user is not a member of the login user group "secrets" and you save a configuration either through the REST API or use the `save` command, the encrypted passwords in the configuration file are replaced with the `*****` placeholder. If you load this configuration, the replaced password fields trigger validation errors because the placeholder does not match the format for an encrypted password. Do not commit this configuration. If you ignore the error message and perform a commit with this invalid configuration, the passwords are deleted.

## Discarding configuration changes

You cannot exit from configuration mode with uncommitted configuration changes; you must either commit the changes or discard them. If you do not want to commit the changes, you can discard them by using the `exit discard` command.

```
vyatta@R1# exit
Cannot exit: configuration modified.
Use 'exit discard' to discard the changes and exit.
vyatta@R1# exit discard
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## Managing system configuration

This section presents the following topics:

- [Saving the running configuration](#) on page 41
- [Loading a saved configuration](#) on page 42
- [Booting from a saved configuration file](#) on page 43
- [Merging saved and running configurations](#) on page 43
- [Archiving configuration versions on commit](#) on page 43
- [Comparing configuration versions](#) on page 43
- [Cloning configuration across system images](#) on page 43
- [Performing file operations on configuration files and directories](#) on page 44

## Saving the running configuration

Save the running configuration by using the `save` command in configuration mode. By default, configuration is saved to the `config.boot` file in the `/config` configuration directory.

```
vyatta@R1# save
Saving configuration to '/config/config.boot'...
Done
vyatta@R1#
```

You can save configuration to a different location by specifying a different file name.

```
vyatta#R1 save testconfig
Saving configuration to '/config/testconfig'...
Done
vyatta@R1#
```

You can also save a configuration file to a location path other than the standard configuration directory by specifying a different path. You can save to a hard drive, compact Flash, or USB device.

Note that the `save` command writes only committed changes. If you try to save uncommitted changes, the system warns you that it is saving only the committed changes.

**CAUTION**

If your login user is not a member of the login user group "secrets" and you save a configuration either through the REST API or use the save command, the encrypted passwords in the configuration file are replaced with the \*\*\*\*\* placeholder. If you load this configuration, the replaced password fields trigger validation errors because the placeholder does not match the format for an encrypted password. Do not commit this configuration. If you ignore the error message and perform a commit with this invalid configuration, the passwords are deleted.

Table 10 shows how to specify the syntax for files from different file locations when you save files in configuration mode.

**TABLE 10** Specifying locations for the configuration file

Location	Specification
An absolute path	Use standard UNIX file specification.
A relative path	Specify the path name relative to the location configured for the config-directory parameter of the rtrmgr configuration node.
TFTP server	Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i> .  tftp://ip-address / config-file  where <i>ip-address</i> is the IP address of the TFTP server, and <i>config-file</i> is the configuration file, including the path relative to the TFTP root directory.
FTP server	Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i> .  ftp://ip-address / config-file  where <i>ip-address</i> is the IP address of the FTP server, and <i>config-file</i> is the configuration file, including the path.  If you use FTP, you are prompted for a user name and password.
HTTP server	Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i> .  http://ip-address / config-file  where <i>ip-address</i> is the IP address of the HTTP server, and <i>config-file</i> is the configuration file, including the path.

## Loading a saved configuration

To load a previously saved configuration, use the **load** command in configuration mode. By default, the system reads the file from the / config configuration directory.

```
vyatta@R1# load testconfig
Loading config file /config/testconfig...

Load complete. Use 'commit' to make changes active.
[edit]
vyatta@R1#
```

A loaded configuration then needs to be committed to become the active configuration.

**CAUTION**

If your login user is not a member of the login user group "secrets" and you save a configuration either through the REST API or use the save command, the encrypted passwords in the configuration file are replaced with the \*\*\*\*\* placeholder. If you load this configuration, the replaced password fields trigger validation errors because the placeholder does not match the format for an encrypted password. Do not commit this configuration. If you ignore the error message and perform a commit with this invalid configuration, the passwords are deleted.

## Booting from a saved configuration file

If you want the file to be automatically read the next time the system starts, you must save it as the `config.boot` file in the default `/config` directory.

## Merging saved and running configurations

You can merge a saved configuration with the active (running) configuration by using the **merge** command. An example is provided in [merge](#) on page 57.

The merger adds new configuration entries and applies any modifications to existing active entries to produce a new working configuration. This merged configuration must be committed before it becomes the active configuration.

Configuration can be loaded from a hard disk (including a Flash disk or USB device), a TFTP server, an FTP server, an SCP server, or an HTTP server. Note that you cannot load an empty configuration file; the configuration file must contain at least one configuration node.

## Archiving configuration versions on commit

The system automatically archives the configuration whenever you commit a configuration change. The new, committed configuration version is saved to the `config.boot` file in the `/config` directory. The old `config.boot` file is saved to the `/config/archive` directory under the name `config.boot.timestamp`, where *timestamp* is the time the file was saved in the form of `YYYY-MM-DD-hhmmss`.

By default, the system maintains 20 versions of configuration in the archive. You can change the number of versions maintained in the archive by using the **system config-management commit-revisions** command.

You can also direct the system to save configuration versions to a remote location whenever configuration is committed by using the **system config-management commit-archive** command. FTP, SCP, and TFTP destinations are supported.

## Comparing configuration versions

You can compare two versions of configuration by using the **show system commit** and **compare** commands. [Table 11](#) summarizes options for comparing configuration versions.

**TABLE 11** Commands for comparing configuration versions

Use this command	To see the
<b>Configuration Commands</b>	
<b>compare</b>	Difference between the working and active configuration.
<b>compare <i>n</i></b>	Difference between the working configuration and revision <i>n</i> .
<b>compare <i>n m</i></b>	Difference between revision <i>n</i> and revision <i>m</i> .
<b>Operational Commands</b>	
<b>show system commit</b>	Summary of commits.
<b>show system commit file <i>n</i></b>	Full configuration at revision <i>n</i> .
<b>show system commit file <i>n compare m</i></b>	Difference between revision <i>n</i> and revision <i>m</i> .
<b>show system commit diff <i>n</i></b>	What changed in a given commit (between revision <i>n</i> and revision <i>n</i> +1). This command is equivalent to the <b>show system file:<i>n</i>compare<i>n</i>+1</b> command.

## Cloning configuration across system images

You can copy the `/config` directory from one image to another by using the **clone system config** command.

This command copies the `/config` directory from the running configuration (or another specified configuration) to the `/config` directory of another specified image. You should use this command with caution because it overwrites the entire `/config` directory of the destination image and its effects are not reversible.

## Performing file operations on configuration files and directories

The Brocade vRouter supports several general file-operation commands that are optimized for working with image and configuration files. They are the **show file**, **copy file**, and **delete file** commands. These commands are documented in [Using the CLI](#) on page 17.

These commands are optimized for configuration files and directories because command completion refers to the `/config` directory of all known system images. For example, `running://config/` indicates the `/config` directory of the currently running system, and `test-image1://config/` indicates the `/config` directory of an image called `test-image1`. If needed, however, any other location within the file system can be specified.

# Configuration Commands

- clone system config <dest-image-name>..... 46
- commit..... 48
- compare..... 49
- configure..... 50
- delete..... 51
- discard..... 52
- edit..... 53
- exit (configuration)..... 54
- load..... 55
- merge..... 57
- monitor command <show-command>..... 59
- save..... 60
- set..... 62
- show..... 63
- show configuration (operational)..... 65
- show system commit..... 67
- show system commit diff <rev-num>..... 68
- show system commit file <rev-num>..... 69
- system config-management commit-archive location <location>..... 71
- system config-management commit-revisions <revisions>..... 73
- top..... 74
- up..... 75

The following commands are optimized for working with files across images.

Related Commands Documented Elsewhere	
<pre>copy file &lt;from-file&gt; to &lt;to-file&gt; delete file &lt;file&gt; show file &lt;file&gt;</pre>	These commands allow you to perform general file management tasks, but use image-relative completion to make it easy to work with files in different images.
<pre>show log image &lt;image-name&gt;</pre>	This command allows you to view log files across multiple images.

## clone system config <dest-image-name>

Clones the configuration directory of one image to another image.

### Syntax

```
clone system config dest-image-name [ from source-image-name ]
```

### Command Default

The configuration directory is copied from the running system.

### Parameters

*dest-image-name*

The name of the image to which the configuration directory is copied.

*source-image-name*

Optional. The name of the image from which the configuration directory is copied.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to copy the configuration (`/config`) directory from one image to another. By default, the source image is the currently running image.

This command is equivalent to the **copy file running://config to dest-image-name://config** command.

#### NOTE

Use this command with caution because it overwrites the entire `/config` directory of the destination image and its effects are not reversible.

Command completion displays all valid system images. It is not possible to clone the directory to the running image or the disk-installation image.

## Examples

The following example shows how to copy the contents of the `/config` directory of the currently running system to the `/config` directory of the TEST-IMAGE-1 image.

```
vyatta@vyatta:~$ clone system config TEST-IMAGE-1
WARNING: This is a destructive copy of the /config directories
This will erase all data in the TEST-IMAGE-1://config directory
This data severity level of replaced with the data from running://
Do you wish to continue? (Y/N): y
config/
config/.vyatta_config
...
```

The following example shows how to copy the contents of the `/config` directory of the TEST-IMAGE-2 system to the `/config` directory of the TEST-IMAGE-1 image.

```
vyatta@vyatta:~$ clone system config TEST-IMAGE-1 from TEST-IMAGE-2
WARNING: This is a destructive copy of the /config directories
This will erase all data in the TEST-IMAGE-1://config directory
This data severity level of replaced with the data from TEST-IMAGE-2
Do you wish to continue? (Y/N): y
sending incremental file list
config/
config/.vyatta_config
...
```

## commit

Applies uncommitted configuration changes.

## Syntax

**commit**

## Modes

Configuration mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to apply uncommitted changes to configuration.

When you add configuration to the system, modify existing configuration, or delete configuration from the system, the changes you make must be committed before they take effect. To commit changes, use the **commit** command.

If you try to exit or quit from configuration mode while there are still uncommitted configuration changes, the system gives you a warning. You cannot exit from configuration mode until you either commit the changes by entering the **commit** command or discard the changes by using the **discard** command.

Until a configuration change is committed, the system marks the change when displaying the information.



### CAUTION

If your login user is not a member of the login user group "secrets" and you save a configuration either through the REST API or use the **save** command, the encrypted passwords in the configuration file are replaced with the "\*\*\*\*\*" placeholder. If you load this configuration, the replaced password fields trigger validation errors because the placeholder does not match the format for an encrypted password. Do not commit this configuration. If you ignore the error message and perform a commit with this invalid configuration, the passwords are deleted.

Committing changes can take time, depending on the complexity of the configuration and how busy the system is. Be prepared to wait for several seconds for the system to complete committing the changes.

If two or more users are logged in to the system in configuration mode and one user changes the configuration, the other user or users receive a warning.

### NOTE

Commits are logged at logging levels **info** and **debug**.

## Examples

The following example shows an uncommitted deletion that is then committed. In the example, notice that the uncommitted deletion is flagged with a minus sign (-), which disappears after the change is committed.

```
vyatta@vyatta# show interfaces dataplane dp0p1p2
-address 192.168.1.100/24
 hw-id 00:13:46:e6:f6:87
vyatta@vyatta# commit
vyatta@vyatta# show interfaces dataplane dp0p1p3
 hw-id 00:13:46:e6:f6:87
```



## compare

Compares two sets of configuration information.

## Syntax

```
compare [ [ rev-num1] rev-num ]
```

## Command Default

When used with no option, the working and active (running) configuration are compared. When only one revision number is specified, the system compares the working configuration to the specified revision.

## Parameters

*rev-num*

A configuration file revision to be compared.

*rev-num1*

Another configuration file revision to be compared.

## Modes

Configuration mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to compare two configurations while in configuration mode.

You can see the list of configuration file revisions by using [show system commit](#) on page 67 in operational mode (use **run show system commit** in configuration mode).

## Examples

The following example shows the working and active configurations being compared on R1.

```
vyatta@R1# compare
[edit system]
+options {
+    reboot-on-panic true
+}
[edit]
vyatta@R1#
```

## configure

Enters configuration mode.

### Syntax

`configure`

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to enter configuration mode from operational mode. In configuration mode, you can add, delete, and modify configuration information.

When you are in configuration mode, the command prompt changes from ~\$ to # to mark the change in command mode.

### Examples

The following example shows the system response to entering configuration mode. In this example, notice that the command prompt changes from ~\$ to # when configuration mode is entered.

```
vyatta@vyatta:~$ configure
vyatta@vyatta#
```

## delete

Deletes a configuration node.

## Syntax

```
delete config-node
```

## Parameters

*config-node*

A configuration node to be deleted, including the full path, separated by spaces, through the configuration hierarchy to the node.

## Modes

Configuration mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to delete a part of configuration. To do this, you delete the appropriate subnode of a configuration node.

If you show configuration before it is committed, you see the deleted statement flagged with a minus sign (-); the statement disappears after the configuration change is committed.

Some configuration nodes and statements are mandatory; these nodes or statements cannot be deleted. Some configuration statements are mandatory but have default values; if you delete one of these statements, the default value is restored.

## Examples

The following example shows how to delete a DNS server from system configuration.

```
vyatta@vyatta# show system name-server <Tab>
10.0.0.30 10.0.0.31 10.0.0.32
vyatta@vyatta# delete system name-server 10.0.0.32
vyatta@vyatta# show system name-server <Tab>
10.0.0.30 10.0.0.31
```

## discard

Discards any uncommitted changes to configuration.

## Syntax

```
discard
```

## Modes

Configuration mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to discard all uncommitted changes to configuration.

## Examples

The following example shows an uncommitted deletion and an uncommitted addition that are then discarded. In the example, notice that the uncommitted deletion is flagged with a minus sign "-" and the uncommitted addition is flagged with a plus sign (+), which disappear after the **discard** command is entered.

```
vyatta@vyatta# show interfaces dataplane dp0p1p3
-address 192.168.1.100/24
+address 192.168.1.101/24
 hw-id 00:13:46:e6:f6:87
vyatta@vyatta# discard
Changes have been discarded
vyatta@vyatta# show interfaces dataplane dp0p1p3
 address 192.168.1.100/24
 hw-id: 00:13:46:e6:f6:87
```

## edit

Navigates to a subnode in the configuration tree for editing.

## Syntax

`edit path`

## Parameters

*path*

The path to a node of the configuration tree you want to edit.

## Modes

Configuration mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to navigate to a specific configuration subnode for editing. The [edit] prompt changes dynamically to mark your place in the configuration tree.

Once at that location, any actions you take such as showing, creating, or deleting configuration are relative to your location in the tree.

You can navigate only to a configuration node that has already been created and committed. Configuration nodes are created and modified by using [set](#) on page 62 and are committed by using [commit](#) on page 48.

## Examples

In the following example, the user begins at the top of the configuration tree in configuration mode and navigates to the system login configuration node. Once at the system login node, a **show** command displays just the contents of the login node.

In the example, notice that the prompt changes to [edit system login] to mark the location in the configuration tree.

```
vyatta@vyatta# edit system login
[edit system login]
vyatta@vyatta# show
user mike {
    authentication {
        encrypted-password $1$hccJixQo$V6sL5hDl6CUmVZvaH1vTf0
        plaintext-password ""
    }
}
user vyatta {
    authentication {
        encrypted-password $1$$Ht7gBYnxI1xCd0/JOnodh.
    }
}
[edit system login]
```

## exit (configuration)

Navigates up one level of usage.

### Syntax

```
exit [ discard ]
```

### Parameters

**discard**

Exits configuration mode to operational mode and discards all uncommitted changes.

### Modes

Configuration mode.

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command from a subnode in the configuration tree to navigate to the top of the configuration tree.

Use this command from the top of the configuration tree to exit from configuration mode to operational mode.

If you try to exit from configuration mode while there are still uncommitted configuration changes, the system gives you a warning. You cannot exit from configuration mode until you either commit the changes by entering the **commit** command or discard the changes by using the **discard** option. This option applies only to this usage.

Use this command in operational mode to exit the system.

## load

Loads from a file a configuration that was previously saved.

## Syntax

**load** *file-name*

## Parameters

*file-name*

The name of a configuration file, including the full path to its location.

## Modes

Configuration mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to load from a file a configuration that was previously saved.

The loaded configuration becomes the working configuration and must be committed before it becomes the active configuration.



### CAUTION

If your login user is not a member of the login user group "secrets" and you save a configuration either through the REST API or use the save command, the encrypted passwords in the configuration file are replaced with the "\*\*\*\*\*" placeholder. If you load this configuration, the replaced password fields trigger validation errors because the placeholder does not match the format for an encrypted password. Do not commit this configuration. If you ignore the error message and perform a commit with this invalid configuration, the passwords are deleted.

Configuration can be loaded from a hard disk (including a Flash disk or USB device), a TFTP server, an FTP server, an SCP server, or an HTTP server. Note that you cannot load an empty configuration file; the configuration file must contain at least one configuration node. In addition, an error is reported if an invalid configuration file is loaded.

The default configuration directory is `/config`.

The following table shows how to specify the syntax for files from different file locations.

**TABLE 12** Specifying locations for the configuration file

Location	Specification
An absolute path	Use standard UNIX file specification.
A relative path	Specify the path name relative to the default configuration directory.
FTP server	Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i> .  <code>ftp:// user:passwd@host / config-file</code>  where <i>user</i> is the username on the host, <i>passwd</i> is the password associated with the username, <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the FTP server, and <i>config-file</i> is the configuration file, including the path.  If you do not specify <i>user</i> and <i>passwd</i> , you are prompted for them.
SCP server	Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i> .

TABLE 12 Specifying locations for the configuration file (continued)

Location	Specification
	<p><i>scp:// user:passwd@host / config-file</i></p> <p>where <i>user</i> is the username on the host, <i>passwd</i> is the password associated with the username, <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the SCP server, and <i>config-file</i> is the configuration file, including the path.</p> <p>If you do not specify <i>user</i> and <i>passwd</i>, you are prompted for them.</p>
HTTP server	<p>Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i>.</p> <p><i>http:// host / config-file</i></p> <p>where <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the HTTP server, and <i>config-file</i> is the configuration file, including the path.</p>
TFTP server	<p>Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i>.</p> <p><i>tftp:// host / config-file</i></p> <p>where <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the TFTP server, and <i>config-file</i> is the configuration file, including the path relative to the TFTP root directory.</p>

## Examples

The following example shows how to load the `testconfig` file from the default configuration directory.

```
vyatta@vyatta# load testconfig
Loading config file /config/testconfig...

Load complete. Use 'commit' to make changes active.
[edit]
vyatta@vyatta#
```



## merge

Merges a saved configuration with the active (running) configuration.

## Syntax

```
merge file-name
```

## Parameters

*file-name*

The name of a configuration file, including the full path to its location.

## Modes

Configuration mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to load from a file a configuration that was previously saved and merge it with the active (running) configuration. The merger adds new configuration entries and applies any modifications to existing active entries to produce a new working configuration. This configuration must be committed before it becomes the active configuration.

Configuration can be loaded from a hard disk (including a Flash disk or USB device), a TFTP server, an FTP server, an SCP server, or an HTTP server. Note that you cannot load an empty configuration file; the configuration file must contain at least one configuration node.

The default configuration directory is `/config`.

The following table shows how to specify the syntax for files from different file locations.

**TABLE 13** Specifying locations for the configuration file

Location	Specification
An absolute path	Use standard UNIX file specification.
A relative path	Specify the path name relative to the default configuration directory.
FTP server	Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i> .  <i>ftp://user:passwd@host / config-file</i>  where <i>user</i> is the username on the host, <i>passwd</i> is the password associated with the username, <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the FTP server, and <i>config-file</i> is the configuration file, including the path.  If you do not specify <i>user</i> and <i>passwd</i> , you are prompted for them.
SCP server	Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i> .  <i>scp://user:passwd@host / config-file</i>  where <i>user</i> is the username on the host, <i>passwd</i> is the password associated with the username, <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the SCP server, and <i>config-file</i> is the configuration file, including the path.  If you do not specify <i>user</i> and <i>passwd</i> , you are prompted for them.
HTTP server	Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i> .

TABLE 13 Specifying locations for the configuration file (continued)

Location	Specification
	<p><code>http://host/config-file</code></p> <p>where <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the HTTP server, and <i>config-file</i> is the configuration file, including the path.</p>
TFTP server	<p>Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i>.</p> <p><code>tftp://host/config-file</code></p> <p>where <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the TFTP server, and <i>config-file</i> is the configuration file, including the path relative to the TFTP root directory.</p>

## Examples

The following example shows how to load the testconfig configuration file from the default configuration directory and merge it with the active configuration.

The new working configuration must be committed before it becomes active. After the merger, you must save the new file if you want to be able to load it again. If you want the system to load the merged configuration when it boots, you must save the file to `/config/config.boot`.

```
vyatta@vyatta# merge testconfig
Loading config file /config/testconfig...

Merge complete. Use 'commit' to make changes active.
[edit]
vyatta@vyatta#
```

## monitor command <show-command>

Monitors the command output of a show command.

### Syntax

`monitor command show-command`

`run monitor command show-command`

### Parameters

*show-command*

Any **show** command to be monitored. The **show** command must be enclosed in quotation marks.

### Modes

Operational mode.

Configuration mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display the output of a **show** command. The session stays open and display information is refreshed every two seconds.

Use the **run** version of this command in configuration mode.

## save

Saves the running configuration to a file.

## Syntax

**save** *file-name*

## Parameters

*file-name*

The name of a file in which the information is to be saved, including the path to the file.

## Modes

Configuration mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to save the running configuration to a file.

The resulting file can later be loaded into the running system to replace the previous running configuration by using [load](#) on page 55. A nonabsolute path is interpreted relative to the default configuration directory, which is `/config`.

The following table shows how to specify the syntax for files from different file locations.

**TABLE 14** Specifying locations for the configuration file

Location	Specification
An absolute path	Use standard UNIX file specification.
A relative path	Specify the path name relative to the default configuration directory.
FTP server	<p>Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i>:</p> <pre>ftp://user:passwd@host /config-file</pre> <p>where <i>user</i> is the username on the host, <i>passwd</i> is the password associated with the username, <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the FTP server, and <i>config-file</i> is the configuration file, including the path.</p> <p>If you do not specify <i>user</i> and <i>passwd</i>, you are prompted for them.</p>
SCP server	<p>Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i>:</p> <pre>scp://user:passwd@host /config-file</pre> <p>where <i>user</i> is the username on the host, <i>passwd</i> is the password associated with the username, <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the SCP server, and <i>config-file</i> is the configuration file, including the path.</p> <p>If you do not specify <i>user</i> and <i>passwd</i>, you are prompted for them.</p>
TFTP server	<p>Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i>:</p> <pre>tftp://host /config-file</pre> <p>where <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the TFTP server, and <i>config-file</i> is the configuration file, including the path relative to the TFTP root directory.</p>

If you overwrite a configuration file, the system retains one backup, using a *file-name~* convention. For example, if you write over `my-config.boot`, the system moves the previous file to `my-config.boot~`.

Note that the **save** command writes only committed changes. If you make configuration changes and try to save them, the system warns you that you have uncommitted changes and then saves only the committed changes.



#### CAUTION

If your login user is not a member of the login user group "secrets" and you save a configuration either through the REST API or use the `save` command, the encrypted passwords in the configuration file are replaced with the `*****` placeholder. If you load this configuration, the replaced password fields trigger validation errors because the placeholder does not match the format for an encrypted password. Do not commit this configuration. If you ignore the error message and perform a commit with this invalid configuration, the passwords are deleted.

## Examples

The following example shows how to save the running configuration to the `my-config` file in the default configuration directory, exit configuration mode, and display the set of files stored in the configuration directory.

```
vyatta@vyatta# save my-config
Saving configuration to '/config/my-config'...
Done
vyatta@vyatta# exit
vyatta@vyatta:~$ show files /config
total 24K
-rw-rw-r-- 1 vyatta xorp 2.8K Nov 28 10:30 config.boot
-rw-rw-r-- 1 vyatta xorp 2.8K Nov 27 14:32 config.boot~
-rw-rw-r-- 1 vyatta xorp 2.8K Nov 28 10:30 my-config
-rw-rw-r-- 1 vyatta xorp 2.8K Nov 27 21:50 my-config~
vyatta@vyatta:~$
```

The following example shows how to save the current running configuration to the `my-config` file in the root directory of a TFTP server at 10.1.0.35.

```
vyatta@vyatta# save tftp://10.1.0.35/my-config
Saving configuration to 'tftp://10.1.0.35/my-config'...
Done
vyatta@vyatta#
```

## set

Creates a new configuration node or modifies an attribute in an existing configuration node.

## Syntax

To create a new configuration node, the syntax is as follows:

```
set config-node [ identifier ]
```

To set an attribute within a configuration node, the syntax is as follows:

```
set config-node [ identifier ] attribute [ value ]
```

## Parameters

*config-node*

A configuration node to be created or modified, including the full path, separated by spaces, through the configuration hierarchy to the node.

*identifier*

The identifier of a configuration node. The identifier is mandatory if the configuration node has an identifier; otherwise, it is not allowed.

*attribute*

A configuration attribute to be set. If the attribute statement does not exist, it is created. If the attribute statement already exists, its value is set to the new value.

*value*

The new value of the attribute. The value is mandatory if the attribute statement requires a value; otherwise, it is not allowed.

## Modes

Configuration mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to add a configuration element to the current configuration—for example, to enable a routing protocol or define an interface.

You can also use this command to modify the value of an existing configuration item. When setting configuration values, note that the change does not take effect until the change is committed by using [commit](#) on page 48.

After a configuration node has been added, you can modify it later by using [set](#) or delete it by using [delete](#) on page 51.

## Examples

The following example shows how to add a configuration node for a data plane interface and commit the change.

```
vyatta@vyatta# set interfaces dataplane dp0p1p2 address
192.150.187.108/24
vyatta@vyatta# commit
```

## show

Displays configuration information in configuration mode.

## Syntax

```
show [ -all ] config-node
```

## Parameters

*config-node*

A configuration node you want to display, including the path. The node must exist and the created node must have been committed.

Specification of the configuration node is interpreted relative to your current position in the configuration tree.

**-all**

Includes default information in the displayed information.

## Command Default

When used with no configuration node specification, this command displays all existing configuration nodes and subnodes starting from your current location in the configuration tree.

When used without the **-all** keyword, this command does not display default information.

## Modes

Configuration mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command in configuration mode to display the configured state of the system.

This command displays the specified configuration node and all subnodes. The node specification is interpreted relative to your current location in the configuration tree.

Unless the **-all** keyword is used, default information is not included in displayed information.

In addition to this command, a number of **show** commands are available in operational mode.

## Examples

The following example shows how to display the configuration information of data plane interfaces by using the **show** command in configuration mode. In this case, because the **-all** keyword is not used, the default information is not included in the output.

```
vyatta@vyatta# show interfaces dataplane
  dataplane dp0s160 {
    address 10.18.170.205/24
  }
[edit]
```

The following example shows how to display the configuration information, including the default information, of data plane interfaces by using the **show** command with the **-all** keyword in configuration mode.

```
vyatta@vyatta# show -all interfaces dataplane
dataplane dp0s160 {
  address 10.18.170.205/24
  ip {
    gratuitous-arp-count 1
    rpf-check disable
  }
  ipv6 {
    dup-addr-detect-transmits 1
  }
  mtu 1500
  vlan-protocol 0x8100
}
[edit]
```

The following example shows how to display the configuration information, including the default information, of the SSH service by using the **show** command with the **-all** keyword in configuration mode.

```
vyatta@vyatta# show -all service ssh
ssh {
  authentication-retries 3
  timeout 120
}
[edit]
```



## show configuration (operational)

Displays system configuration from operational mode.

### Syntax

```
show configuration [ all | commands | files ]
```

### Command Default

Displays only the values that have been set explicitly, that is, nondefault values.

### Parameters

#### all

Displays all configuration, including default values that would not normally be displayed.

#### commands

Displays the running configuration as a list of **set** commands. These commands generate the configuration from scratch.

#### files

Displays a list of configuration files in the `/config` file.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display system configuration information while remaining in operational mode.

Using **show configuration** in operational mode is equivalent to using **show** in configuration mode.

## Examples

The following example shows how to display the configuration from operational mode. (For brevity, only the first screen of the information is shown.)

```
vyatta@vyatta:~$ show configuration
interfaces {
  dataplane dp0p1p1 {
    address 192.168.1.77/24
    hw-id 00:0c:29:68:b3:9f
  }
  dataplane dp0p1p2 {
    hw-id 00:0c:29:68:b3:a9
  }
  loopback lo {
  }
}
service {
  ssh {
  }
}
system {
  host-name R1
  login {
    user vyatta {
      authentication {
        encrypted-password *****
      }
    }
  }
}
:
```

## show system commit

Displays a summary of file revisions for a configuration.

### Syntax

```
show system commit
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display a summary of file revisions for a configuration.

### Examples

The following example shows the commit history of system R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system commit
0  2010-11-15 16:55:17 by vyatta via cli
   delete firewall
1  2010-11-15 16:54:40 by vyatta via cli
2  2010-11-15 16:54:40 by root via cli
   baseline
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## show system commit diff <rev-num>

Compares adjacent configuration file revisions.

### Syntax

```
show system commit diff rev-num
```

### Parameters

*rev-num*

A configuration file revision to compare with a subsequent revision; that is: *rev-num* +1.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to compare adjacent revisions of the configuration file.

The revisions to be compared are *rev-num* and *rev-num*+1. This command is a shortcut for the **show system commit file *rev-num* compare *rev-num*+1** command. You can see the list of configuration file revisions by using [show system commit](#) on page 67.

### Examples

The following example shows configuration file revision 18 on R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system commit diff 18
[edit routing routing-instance red]
-protocols {
-  static {
-    route 20.2.3.0/24 {
-      next-hop 20.1.2.2
-    }
-    route 20.2.4.0/24 {
-      next-hop 20.1.2.2
-    }
-    route 20.3.2.0/24 {
-      next-hop 20.1.2.2
-    }
-    route 20.3.4.0/24 {
-      next-hop 20.1.2.2
-      next-hop 20.3.1.2
-    }
-    route 20.4.2.0/24 {
-      next-hop 20.1.2.2
-    }
-    route 20.4.4.0/24 {
-      next-hop 20.1.2.2
-    }
-  }
-}
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## show system commit file <rev-num>

Displays a specific revision of the configuration file.

### Syntax

```
show system commit file rev-num [ compare rev-num1 ]
```

### Parameters

*rev-num*

The revision number of the configuration file to display.

*rev-num1*

The revision number of the configuration file with which to compare.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display a specific revision of the configuration file. Use the **compare** option to compare two revisions of the configuration file. You can display the list of configuration file revisions by using [show system commit](#) on page 67.

## Examples

The following example shows revision 0 of the configuration file on R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system commit file 0
  interfaces {
    dataplane dp0p1p1 {
      address dhcp
      description "bridge to io"
      duplex auto
      speed auto
    }
  }
[... the rest of the configuration file]
vyatta@R1:~$
```

The following example shows two configuration file revisions (18 and 19) being compared on R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system commit file 18 compare 19
[edit routing routing-instance red]
-protocols {
-  static {
-    route 20.2.3.0/24 {
-      next-hop 20.1.2.2
-    }
-    route 20.2.4.0/24 {
-      next-hop 20.1.2.2
-    }
-    route 20.3.2.0/24 {
-      next-hop 20.1.2.2
-    }
-    route 20.3.4.0/24 {
-      next-hop 20.1.2.2
-      next-hop 20.3.1.2
-    }
-    route 20.4.2.0/24 {
-      next-hop 20.1.2.2
-    }
-    route 20.4.4.0/24 {
-      next-hop 20.1.2.2
-    }
-  }
-}
[edit]
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## system config-management commit-archive location <location>

Enables automatic archiving of configuration revisions to a specified location every time a change is committed.

### Syntax

```
set system config-management commit-archive location location
delete system config-management commit-archive location location
show system config-management commit-archive location
```

### Command Default

When this option is not set, system configuration is archived locally, but is not archived remotely, on commit.

### Parameters

*location*

Multinode. A location for the configuration archive. Archives are transferred by any of the following file-transfer methods and their general formats:

**scp://** *user:passwd@host / dir*

**ftp://** *user:passwd@host / dir*

**tftp://** *host / dir*

where *user* is the user name on the host, *passwd* is the password associated with the user name, *host* is the host name or IP address of the remote server, and *dir* is the directory path in which to save the file. The saved file contains the original file name ( `config.boot` ) followed by the host name of the local system, date (YYYYMMDD), and time (HHMMSS). For example, `config.boot-R1.20110126_193402` is the `config.boot` file from R1 saved on Jan 26, 2011 at 7:34:02pm.

You can define more than one archive location by creating multiple location configuration nodes.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  config-management {
    commit-archive {
      location location
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to enable automatic remote archiving of configuration on commit.

The system automatically archives configuration on commit. These archives are stored locally in the `/config/archive` directory and the number of revisions to keep is set by using `system config-management commit-revisions <revisions>` on page 73.

The `system config-management commit-archive location <location>` allows you to archive an unlimited number of configuration revisions to a remote location by using FTP, SCP, or TFTP as the file transfer method. The archive operation occurs in the foreground.

However, for this command to succeed with SCP, the router must have the public key of the SCP host. To provide the public key to the router, log in to the SCP host using SSH (SCP uses SSH as its underlying protocol to copy the file) and say 'yes' to the public key that is presented by the SCP host.

Use the **set** form of this command to enable remote archiving of configuration revisions and specify the location of the archive.

Use the **delete** form of this command to disable remote archiving of configuration revisions.

Use the **show** form of this command to view remote archiving of configuration.



## system config-management commit-revisions <revisions>

Specifies the number of configuration revisions to store locally.

### Syntax

**set** system config-management commit-revisions *revisions*

**delete** system config-management commit-revisions

**show** system config-management commit-revisions

### Command Default

By default, 20 configuration revisions are stored.

### Parameters

*revisions*

The maximum number of configuration revisions to store locally. The default maximum is 20.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  config-management {
    commit-revisions revisions
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify the maximum number of configuration revisions to store locally.

The system automatically stores revisions of system configuration every time a configuration change is committed. These revisions are stored in the `/config/archive` directory. This command sets the number of revisions to be stored.

A new revision is stored each time the configuration is committed. After the maximum number of revisions has been reached, the oldest revision is removed to make way for a new revision.

Note that you can store an unlimited number of configuration revisions to a remote location by using [system config-management commit-archive location <location>](#) on page 71.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify the number of locally stored configuration revisions.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default maximum number of 20 revisions.

Use the **show** form of this command to view the maximum number of configuration revisions that are archived locally.

## top

Navigates quickly to the top level of the configuration hierarchy.

## Syntax

top

## Modes

Configuration mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to navigate quickly to the top level of the configuration hierarchy.

## Examples

The following example shows how to navigate down through several nodes of the configuration tree, then use the **top** command to jump directly to the top of the tree. In the example, notice that the [edit] line displays the location in the configuration tree.

```
vyatta@vyatta# edit protocols rip interface dp0p1p1
[edit protocols/rip/interface/dp0p1p1]
vyatta@vyatta# top
vyatta@vyatta#
```

## up

Navigates up one level in the configuration hierarchy.

## Syntax

**up**

## Modes

Configuration mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to navigate up one level in the configuration hierarchy.

## Examples

The following example shows how to navigate down through several nodes of the configuration tree, then use the **up** command to navigate successively higher in the tree. In the example, notice that the [edit] line displays the location in the configuration tree.

```
vyatta@vyatta# edit protocols rip interface dp0p1p1
[edit protocols/rip/interface/dp0p1p1]
vyatta@vyatta# up
[edit protocols/rip/interface]
vyatta@vyatta# up
[edit protocols/rip/]
```



# System Management

- [Basic system configuration](#)..... 77
- [Configuring CPU affinity](#)..... 84
- [Monitoring system information](#)..... 85

This chapter describes Brocade vRouter features for basic system management tasks, such as setting host information, working with the ARP cache, and setting the system date and time.

## Basic system configuration

The commands in this chapter allow you to change and view basic IP system information. This section presents the following topics:

- [Configuring host information](#) on page 77
- [Configuring DNS](#) on page 80
- [Configuring date and time](#) on page 82

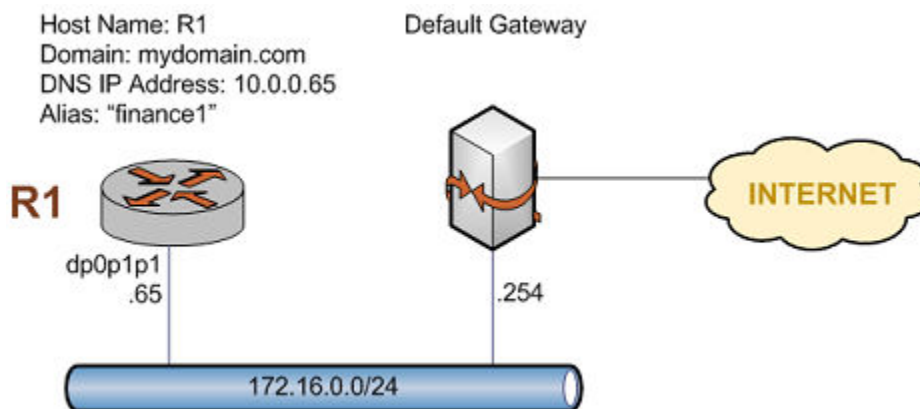
## Configuring host information

This section presents the following topics:

- [Host name](#) on page 78
- [Domain](#) on page 78
- [IP address](#) on page 78
- [Default gateway](#) on page 79
- [Aliases](#) on page 79

In this section, sample configurations are presented for the host information of the system. The following figure shows the sample information.

FIGURE 4 Host information



This section includes the following examples:

- Setting the host name of the system
- Setting the domain name of the system
- Mapping the IP address of the system to its hostname
- Setting the default gateway
- Creating an alias for the system

## Host name

The name of the Brocade vRouter is set by using the **system host-name** command. A system name can include letters, numbers, and hyphens (-).

The following table shows how to set the name of the system to R1. To set the system host name, perform the following steps in configuration mode.

**TABLE 15** Setting the host name of the system

Step	Command
Set the host name of the system.	<pre>vyatta@vyatta# set system host-name R1</pre>
Commit the change. The command prompt changes to reflect the change.	<pre>vyatta@vyatta# commit</pre>
Show the configuration.	<pre>vyatta@R1# show system host-name host-name R1</pre>

## Domain

The domain name of the system is set by using the **system domain-name** command. A domain name can include letters, numbers, hyphens (-), and periods (.).

### NOTE

The **system domain-name** and **system domain-search** commands are mutually exclusive. Only one of the two commands can be configured at any one time.

The following table shows how to set the domain name of the system to mydomain.com.

To set the domain name of the system, perform the following steps in configuration mode.

**TABLE 16** Setting the domain name of the system

Step	Command
Set the domain name.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system domain-name mydomain.com</pre>
Commit the change.	<pre>vyatta@R1# commit</pre>
Show the configuration.	<pre>vyatta@R1# show system domain-name domain-name mydomain.com</pre>

## IP address

The IP address of the system can be statically mapped to its host name for local DNS purposes by using the **system static-host-mapping** command.

IP networks are specified in CIDR format—that is, in *ip-address / prefix* notation such as 192.168.12.0/24. For a single address, use dotted quad format, that is, *a.b.c.d*. For a network prefix, enter a decimal number from 1 through 32.

A good practice is to map the host name of the system to the loopback address because the loopback interface is the most reliable on the system. In this example, the loopback interface is given the 10.0.0.65 address. This address is configured for the loopback interface in the sample topology used in this guide.

The following table shows how to create a static mapping between the R1 host name and 10.0.0.65 IP address. The DNS server uses this IP address to resolve DNS requests for R1.mydomain.com.

To map the host name to the IP address, perform the following steps in configuration mode.

**TABLE 17** Mapping the IP address of the system to its host name

Step	Command
Map the R1 host name to the 10.0.0.65 IP address.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system static-host-mapping host-name R1 inet 10.0.0.65</pre>
Commit the change.	<pre>vyatta@R1# commit</pre>
Show the configuration.	<pre>vyatta@R1# show system static-host-mapping host-name R1 {     inet 10.0.0.65 }</pre>

## Default gateway

The following table shows how to specify a default gateway for the system at 172.16.0.254.

To specify the default gateway, perform the following steps in configuration mode.

**TABLE 18** Setting the default gateway

Step	Command
Specify the default gateway.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set protocols static route 0.0.0.0/0 next-hop 172.16.0.254</pre>
Commit the change.	<pre>vyatta@R1# commit</pre>
Show the configuration.	<pre>vyatta@R1# show protocols static route 0.0.0.0/0 {     next-hop 172.16.0.254 }</pre>

## Aliases

You can define one or more aliases for the system by mapping the IP address of the system to more than one host name.

The following table shows how to create the finance1 alias for the system.

To create an alias for the system, perform the following steps in configuration mode.

**TABLE 19** Creating an alias for the system

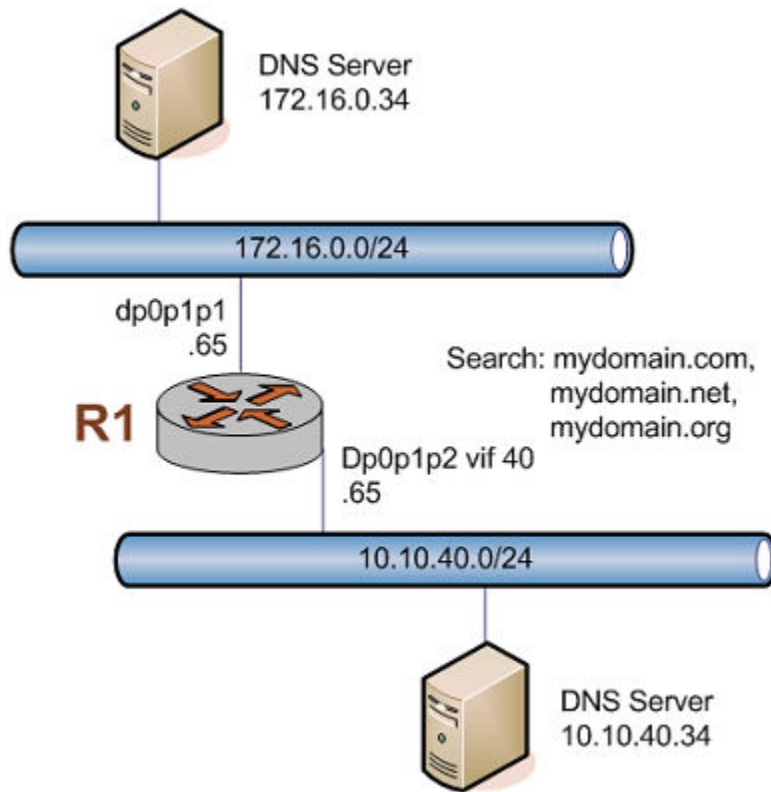
Step	Command
Define an alias.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system static-host-mapping host-name R1 alias finance1</pre>
Commit the change.	<pre>vyatta@R1# commit</pre>
Show the configuration.	<pre>vyatta@R1# show system static-host-mapping host-name R1 {   alias finance1   inet 10.0.0.65 }</pre>

## Configuring DNS

This section presents the following topics:

- [DNS name servers](#) on page 81
- [Domain search order](#) on page 81

In this section, sample configurations are presented for DNS information. The following figure shows the sample DNS information.

**FIGURE 5** DNS information



## DNS name servers

DNS name servers are specified by using the **system name-server** command.

### NOTE

The order in which the DNS name servers are added to the configuration is the order in which they are accessed.

The following table shows how to specify two DNS name servers for the system: one at 172.16.0.34 and the other at 10.10.40.34.

To specify DNS name servers, perform the following steps in configuration mode.

**TABLE 20** Specifying DNS name servers

Step	Command
Specify the first DNS name server.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system name-server 172.16.0.34</pre>
Specify the second DNS name server.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system name-server 10.10.40.34</pre>
Commit the change.	<pre>vyatta@R1# commit</pre>
Show configuration.	<pre>vyatta@R1# show system name-server name-server 172.16.0.34 name-server 10.10.40.34</pre>

## Domain search order

You can specify a list of domains for the system to use to complete an unqualified host name. To define this list, specify the order in which domains are searched by using the **system domain-search** command.

### NOTE

The **system domain-name** and **system domain-search** commands are mutually exclusive. Only one of the two commands can be configured at any one time.

The **system domain-search** command requires that you enter each domain name separately, specified in the order you want them searched. A domain name can include letters, numbers, hyphens (-), and periods (.).

The following table shows how to direct the system to attempt domain completion in the following order: first, mydomain.com; second, mydomain.net; and last mydomain.org.

To specify the domain search order, perform the following steps in configuration mode.

**TABLE 21** Specifying the search order for domain completion

Step	Command
Specify the first domain name.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system domain-search domain mydomain.com</pre>
Specify the second domain name.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system domain-search domain mydomain.net</pre>
Specify the third domain name.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system domain-search domain mydomain.org</pre>
Commit the change.	<pre>vyatta@R1# commit</pre>

**TABLE 21** Specifying the search order for domain completion (continued)

Step	Command
Show the configuration.	<pre>vyatta@R1# show system domain-search domain mydomain.com domain mydomain.net domain mydomain.org</pre>

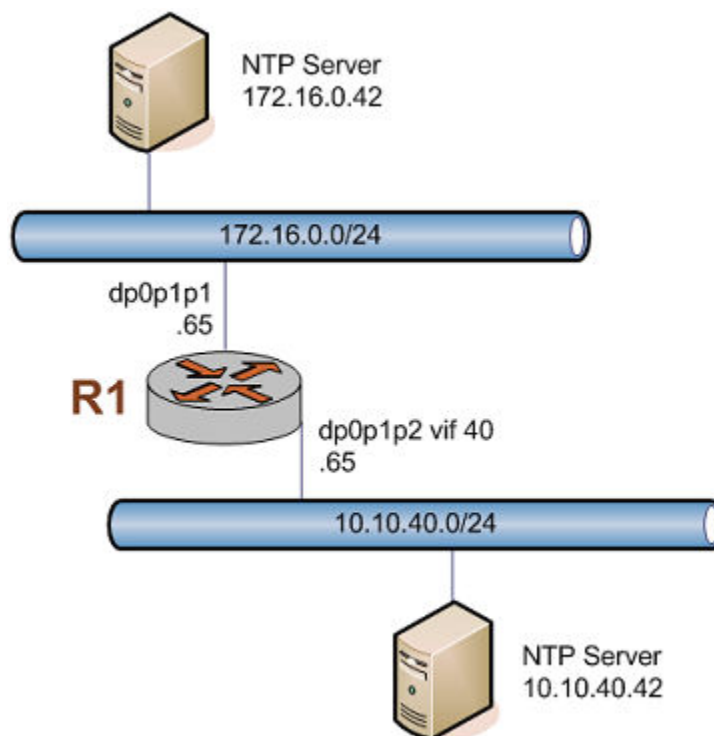
## Configuring date and time

This section presents the following topics:

- [Setting the date](#) on page 83
- [Manually synchronizing with an NTP server](#) on page 83
- [Setting the time zone](#) on page 83
- [Using NTP for automatic synchronization](#) on page 84

Date and time can be either set manually or obtained by manually or automatically synchronizing the system with one or more Network Time Protocol (NTP) servers. The time zone must be manually set and may be specified as an offset from Universal Coordinated Time (UTC) or as one of a number of supported literal time zones.

In this section, sample configurations are presented for maintaining date and time information. The following figure shows the sample date and time information.

**FIGURE 6** Date and time

## Setting the date

The following table shows how to manually set the date to 1:15 PM exactly on April 24, 2007. The format is *MMDDhhmmCCYY*. Alternate formats are *MMDDhhmm*, *MMDDhhmmYY*, and *MMDDhhmmCCYY.ss*.

To manually set the date, perform the following steps in operational mode.

**TABLE 22** Setting the date and time manually

Step	Command
Specify the date. The format is <i>MMDDhhmmCCYY</i> .	<pre>vyatta@R1:~\$ set date 042413152007  Tue Apr 24 13:15:00 GMT 2007 vyatta@R1:~\$</pre>

## Manually synchronizing with an NTP server

The following table shows how to manually synchronize the system clock with the NTP server at 172.16.0.42.

Note that this action performs just a one-time synchronization. It does not set up an ongoing association with the NTP server. For information about setting up automatic synchronization, refer to [Using NTP for automatic synchronization](#) on page 84.

To perform a one-time synchronization with an NTP server, perform the following steps in operational mode.

**TABLE 23** Manually synchronizing the system with an NTP server

Step	Command
Specify the location of the NTP server.	<pre>vyatta@R1:~\$ set date ntp 172.16.0.42  Tue Apr 24 13:15:00 UTC 2007 vyatta@R1:~\$</pre>

## Setting the time zone

The time zone must be set by using the **system time-zone** command. To set the time zone, you specify the region and location (specified as Region/Location) that best defines your time zone. For example, specifying **US/Pacific** sets the time zone to US Pacific time. Command completion (that is, the <Tab> key) can be used to list available time zones. The adjustment for daylight time takes place automatically based on the time of year.

The following table shows how to set the time zone to Pacific time.

To set the time zone, perform the following steps in configuration mode.

**TABLE 24** Setting the time zone as a region and a location

Step	Command
Set the time zone.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system time-zone US/Pacific</pre>
Commit the information.	<pre>vyatta@R1# commit</pre>
Show the configuration.	<pre>vyatta@R1# show system time-zone  time-zone US/Pacific</pre>

## Using NTP for automatic synchronization

To use NTP for automatic synchronization, you must create associations with the NTP servers. To create an association with an NTP server, use the **system ntp server** command and specify the IP address of the server.

The following table shows how to configure two NTP servers: one at 172.16.0.42 and one at 10.10.40.42.

To specify NTP servers, perform the following steps in configuration mode.

**TABLE 25** Using NTP for automatic synchronization

Step	Command
Specify a server at 172.16.0.42.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system ntp server 172.16.0.42</pre>
Specify a server at 10.10.40.42.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system ntp server 10.10.40.42</pre>
Commit the information.	<pre>vyatta@R1# commit</pre>
Show the configuration. (Output is abbreviated here.)	<pre>vyatta@R1# show system  host-name R1 domain-search {     domain mydomain.com     domain mydomain.net     domain mydomain.org } name-server 172.16.0.34  name-server 10.10.40.34  time-zone US/Pacific ntp { server 172.16.0.42     server 10.10.40.42 }</pre>

## Configuring CPU affinity

By default, the Brocade vRouter control and data planes share the CPUs. The data plane uses threads per CPU to perform forwarding work and additional tasks. Its optimization is automatic and high performance for average use environments. However, many environments are not average, for example:

- Extra resources are required for controller or routing protocols.
- Data plane threads must be reduced to avoid consuming resources.

The Brocade vRouter allows you to configure CPU affinity on the default data plane. CPU affinity allows you to designate a range of CPUs used by the data plane threads.

### NOTE

Misconfiguration of CPU affinity may adversely affect the performance of the vRouter.

If you define CPU affinity for the data plane, the data plane threads are bound to a range of CPUs and executed only on these CPUs. When the CPUs are bound to the data plane, the system and controller threads do not use these CPUs. For example, if the data plane is on an eight CPU system, and the data plane CPU affinity is set to CPUs 1 through 3, then the control and system threads use CPUs 0, and 4 through 7.

**NOTE**

The vRouter always allows control threads to run on CPU 0.

To display the number of CPUs available for the data plane, use [show hardware cpu](#) on page 101.

## Configuring CPU affinity on the default data plane

By default, the default data plane use all CPUs. The following example provides the configuration for CPU affinity on the default data plane by using [system default dataplane cpu-affinity <cpu-list>](#) on page 143.

Step	Command
Assign the CPUs for affinity on the default data plane. Enter the CPU IDs as a range of numbers separated by a hyphen or a comma-separated list.	<pre>vyatta@vyatta# set system default dataplane cpu-affinity 1-3,4</pre>
Commit the change.	<pre>vyatta@vyatta# commit</pre>
Show the configuration.	<pre>vyatta@R1# show system default dataplane default dataplane{     cpu-affinity 1-3,6 }</pre>

The CPU ID does not have to exist in the system where the data plane is running. For example, if you configure **cpu-affinity** with a range of **0-3** and the data plane is running on a two CPU system, then the data plane only uses CPUs 0 and 1 and silently ignores the other CPUs in the affinity.

If **cpu-affinity** is out of the range of the available CPUs in the data plane environment, for example, if you configure **cpu-affinity** with a range of **4-7** on a two CPU system, the data plane is not started.

## Monitoring system information

This section presents the following topics:

- [Showing host information](#) on page 85
- [Showing the date and time](#) on page 85

### Showing host information

To view the configured host name, use the **show host name** command in operational mode, as shown in the following example.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show host name
R1
vyatta@R1:~$
```

### Showing the date and time

To view the date and time according to the system clock, use the **show host date** command in operational mode, as shown in the following example.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show host date
```

```
Tue Apr 24 22:23:07 GMT+8 2007  
vyatta@R1:~$
```

# System Management Commands

---

• clear console.....	89
• clear interfaces counters.....	90
• monitor interfaces.....	91
• poweroff.....	92
• reboot.....	93
• reset ip arp address <ipv4>.....	95
• reset ip arp interface <interface_name>.....	96
• set date.....	97
• set terminal.....	98
• show arp.....	99
• show date.....	100
• show hardware cpu.....	101
• show hardware dmi.....	102
• show hardware mem.....	103
• show hardware pci.....	104
• show history.....	105
• show host.....	106
• show ip groups.....	108
• show interfaces.....	109
• show interfaces extensive.....	111
• show license.....	113
• show ntp.....	114
• show ntp packets.....	115
• show ntp status.....	116
• show ntp information.....	117
• show session-table statistics.....	118
• show reboot.....	119
• show system boot-messages.....	120
• show system connections.....	121
• show system kernel-messages.....	122
• show system memory.....	123
• show system power-profile.....	125
• show system processes.....	126
• show system routing-daemons.....	129
• show system storage.....	130
• show system uptime.....	131
• show system usb.....	132
• show tech-support.....	133
• show version.....	135
• system alg ftp.....	138
• system alg icmp disable.....	139
• system console device <device>.....	140
• system console powersave.....	142
• system default dataplane cpu-affinity <cpu-list>.....	143
• system domain-name <domain>.....	144
• system domain-search domain <domain>.....	145
• system host-name <name>.....	146
• system name-server <address>.....	147
• system ntp server <server-name>.....	148

- system power-profile policy <thresholds>.....150
- system power-profile custom <parameter> <threshold>.....151
- system ntp server <server-name> address-family.....152
- system options reboot-on-panic <value>.....153
- system session table-size <size>.....154
- system session timeout custom rule rule-number destination.....155
- system session timeout custom rule rule-number expire.....156
- system session timeout custom rule rule-number protocol.....157
- system session timeout custom rule rule-number source.....158
- system session timeout icmp established.....159
- system session timeout icmp new.....160
- system session timeout other established.....161
- system session timeout other new.....162
- system session timeout tcp close-wait.....163
- system session timeout tcp closed.....164
- system session timeout tcp closing.....165
- system session timeout tcp established.....166
- system session timeout tcp fin-received.....167
- system session timeout tcp fin-sent.....168
- system session timeout tcp fin-wait.....169
- system session timeout tcp last-ack.....170
- system session timeout tcp simsyn-sent.....171
- system session timeout tcp syn-received.....172
- system session timeout tcp syn-sent.....173
- system session timeout tcp time-wait.....174
- system session timeout udp established.....175
- system session timeout udp new.....176
- system static-host-mapping host-name <name>.....177
- system time-zone <zone>.....178

Some commands related to certain features of system management are located in other chapters.

Related Commands Documented Elsewhere	
system login	User management commands are described in <a href="#">User Management</a> on page 205.
system syslog	System logging commands are described in <a href="#">Logging</a> on page 273.



## clear console

Clears the screen of the user console.

### Syntax

`clear console`

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to clear the screen of the user console.

## clear interfaces counters

Clears interface counters for all interfaces.

### Syntax

```
clear interfaces counters
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to clear the counters for all interfaces of all types, including bridge, data plane, loopback and tunnel.

## monitor interfaces

Displays bandwidth utilization statistics for each interface across all interfaces.

### Syntax

```
monitor interfaces
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display bandwidth utilization statistics per interface.

Press the question mark (?) key to toggle the following quick reference information:

- Navigation
- Display settings (for example, graphical or detailed statistics)
- Measurement units

### Examples

The following example shows how to display the bandwidth utilization statistics for each interface on the R1 host.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ monitor interfaces
#  Interface          RX Rate          RX #    TX Rate          TX #
-----
vyatta (source: local)
0  dp0p5p1             0.00B           0        0.00B           0
1  dp0p5p1.10         0.00B           0        0.00B           0
2  dp0port2           0.00B           0        0.00B           0
3  dp0p2p1            0.00B           0        0.00B           0
4  .spathintf         0.00B           0        0.00B           0
5  lo                  0.00B           0        0.00B           0
```

## poweroff

Powers off the system.

### Syntax

```
poweroff [ at time | cancel | now ]
```

### Parameters

#### at *time*

The time at which the system is scheduled to be powered off. Set the date, time, or both directly using one of the following formats:

- hh:mm
- MMDDYY
- "hh:mm MMDDYY"
- +mm

Note that the hour field (hh) uses the 24-hour clock (for example, 3:00 PM is represented as 15 in the hour field).

#### cancel

Cancels a previously scheduled power-off event.

#### now

Powers off the system without asking for confirmation.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to power off the system.

Before the system powers off, a message is broadcast to all logged-in users warning them of the power-off event.

Only users with administrative (admin)-level permission can run this command.

### Examples

The following example shows how to power off the system.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ poweroff
Proceed with poweroff? (Yes/No) [No] y
Broadcast message from root@R1 (tty1) (Mon Dec 17 17:52:37 2012):
The system is going DOWN for system halt NOW!
```

The following example shows how to power off the system at the current time on the specific date of December 11, 2012.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ poweroff at 121112
vyatta@R1:~$
```

The following example shows how to cancel a scheduled power-off event.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ poweroff cancel
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## reboot

Reboots the system.

## Syntax

```
reboot [ at time | cancel | now ]
```

## Parameters

### at *time*

The time at which the system is scheduled to reboot. Set the date, time, or both directly using one of the following formats:

- hh:mm
- MMDDYY
- "hh:mm MMDDYY"
- **midnight**
- **noon**

Note that the hour field (hh) uses the 24-hour clock (for example, 3:00 PM is represented as 15 in the hour field).

### cancel

Cancels a previously scheduled reboot.

### now

Reboots the system without asking for confirmation.

## Modes

Operational mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to reboot the system.

Before the system reboots, a message is broadcast to all logged-in users warning them of the reboot.

Only users with administrative (admin)-level permission can run this command.

## Examples

The following example shows how to reboot the system.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ reboot
Proceed with reboot? (Yes/No) [No] y
Broadcast message from root@R1 (tty1) (Mon Jan 21 17:52:37 2008):
The system is going down for reboot NOW!
```

The following example shows how to reboot the system at the current time on the specific date of December 11, 2009.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ reboot at 121109
Reload scheduled for at Saturday Dec 12 20:18:00 2009
Proceed with reboot schedule? [confirm] y
Reload scheduled for at Saturday Dec 12 20:18:00 2009
```

The following example shows how to cancel a scheduled reboot.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ reboot cancel
Reboot canceled
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## reset ip arp address <ipv4>

Removes entries associated with a specific IP address from the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) cache.

### Syntax

```
reset ip arp address ipv4
```

### Parameters

*ipv4*

Removes the entry for the specified IP address from the ARP cache.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to remove the entry associated with a specific IP address from the ARP cache.

## reset ip arp interface <interface\_name>

Removes the entry associated with an Ethernet interface from the Address Resolution Protocol (ADR) cache.

### Syntax

```
reset ip arp interface interface_name
```

### Parameters

*interface\_name*

The identifier of an interface. Supported interface types are:

- Data plane
- Loopback

For more information about these interface types, refer to [Loopback and Data Plane Interfaces](#) on page 295.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to remove the entry associated with an Ethernet interface from the ARP cache.



## set date

Sets the system date and time directly or specifies a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server from which to acquire them.

### Syntax

```
set date { datetime | ntp ntpserver }
```

### Parameters

#### *datetime*

The date and time in one of the following formats:

- MMDDhhmm
- MMDDhhmmYY
- MMDDhhmmCCYY
- MMDDhhmmCCYY.ss

Note that the hour field (hh) uses the 24-hour clock (for example, 3:00 PM is represented as 15 in the hour field).

#### *ntpserver*

An NTP server from which to acquire the current date and time. You can specify either an IPv4 address or a host name to identify the NTP server.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to set the system date and time either directly or by specifying an NTP server from which to acquire them. If a time zone has not been configured, then Greenwich mean time (GMT) is assumed. The time zone is set by using [system time-zone <zone>](#) on page 178.

### Examples

The following example shows how to set the system date and time to May 15, 2008 at 10:55 PM (assuming that the time zone is set to Pacific daylight time).

```
vyatta@R1:~$ set date 051522552008
Thu May 15 22:55:00 PDT 2008vyatta@R1:~$
```

The following example shows how to set the system date and time by using an NTP server at the 69.59.150.135 IP address.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ set date ntp 69.59.150.135
15 May 23:00:00 ntpdate[7038]: step time server 69.59.150.135 offset 425.819267 secvyatta@R1:~$
```

## set terminal

Sets the behavior of the system terminal.

### Syntax

```
set terminal { key query-help { enable | disable } | length length | pager [pager] | width width }
```

### Parameters

#### key query-help

Enables or disables help by using a question mark (?). The default option is **enable**

#### *length*

The number of rows for the display length on the terminal screen.

#### *pager*

The program to use as the terminal pager. If no pager is specified, the default (less) is used.

#### *width*

The number of columns for the display width on the terminal screen.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to set the behavior of the system terminal.

## show arp

Displays the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) cache of the system.

### Syntax

```
show arp [ interface ]
```

### Parameters

*interface*

An interface for which ARP information is displayed.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display the ARP cache of the system.

The following table shows possible ARP states.

**TABLE 26** ARP states

State	Description
Pending	Address resolution is currently being performed on this neighbor entry.
Valid	The neighbor is reachable. Positive confirmation has been received and the path to this neighbor is operational.
Static	This state is a pseudo-state, indicating that this entry should not be cleared from the cache.
Deleted	The arp entry is deleted.
Local	The arp entry is provided on the data plane only

### Examples

The following example shows how to display the ARP cache of the R1 system.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show arp
IP Address HW address Dataplane Controller Device
10.18.170.1 0:1b:ed:9f:de:41 VALID VALID dp0p160p1
10.18.170.172 00:0c:29:c6:89:a6 VALID dp0p160p1
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## show date

Displays the system date and time in either local time or Universal Time Coordinated (UTC).

## Syntax

```
show date [ utc ]
```

## Parameters

**utc**

Displays the date and time in UTC.

## Modes

Operational mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display the system date and time in either local time or UTC.

## Examples

The following example shows how to display the system date and time on R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show date
Tue May 20 17:27:07 PDT 2008
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## show hardware cpu

Displays CPU information used in the system.

### Syntax

```
show hardware cpu [ summary ]
```

### Parameters

#### summary

Shows the CPUs on the system.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to view CPU information used in the system.

### Examples

The following example shows CPU information on R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show hardware cpu
processor      : 0
vendor_id     : GenuineIntel
cpu family    : 6
model         : 15
model name    : Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU           E5310  @ 1.60GHz
stepping      : 8
cpu MHz       : 1595.101
cache size    : 4096 KB
fdiv_bug      : no
hlt_bug       : no
f00f_bug      : no
coma_bug      : no
fpu           : yes
fpu_exception : yes
cpuid level   : 10
wp            : yes
flags         : fpu vme de pse tsc msr pae mce cx8 apic sep mtrr pge mca cmov pat pse36 clflush dts
acpi mmx fxsr sse sse2 ss nx constant_tsc up arch_perfmon pebs bts pni ds_cpl ssse3 dca
bogomips      : 3213.51
clflush size  : 64
power management:
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## show hardware dmi

Displays information about the desktop management interface (DMI) of the system.

### Syntax

```
show hardware dmi
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to view information about the DMI of the system. The DMI provides a standard framework for managing resources in the device.

### Examples

The following example shows DMI information on R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show hardware dmi
bios_date: 04/17/2006
bios_vendor: Phoenix Technologies LTD
bios_version: 6.00
board_asset_tag:
board_name: 440BX Desktop Reference Platform
board_vendor: Intel Corporation
board_version: None
chassis_asset_tag: No Asset Tag
chassis_type: 1
chassis_vendor: No Enclosure
chassis_version: N/A
product_name: VMware Virtual Platform
product_version: None
sys_vendor: VMware, Inc.
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## show hardware mem

Displays information about the system memory.

### Syntax

```
show hardware mem
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to view information about the system memory.

### Examples

The following example shows memory information on R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show hardware memory
MemTotal:      515972 kB
MemFree:       341468 kB
Buffers:       28772 kB
Cached:        116712 kB
SwapCached:    0 kB
Active:        35912 kB
Inactive:      117272 kB
HighTotal:     0 kB
HighFree:      0 kB
LowTotal:      515972 kB
LowFree:       341468 kB
SwapTotal:     0 kB
SwapFree:      0 kB
Dirty:         0 kB
Writeback:     0 kB
AnonPages:     7700 kB
Mapped:        4048 kB
Slab:          14644 kB
SReclaimable: 9440 kB
SUnreclaim:   5204 kB
PageTables:    288 kB
NFS_Unstable: 0 kB
Bounce:        0 kB
CommitLimit:  257984 kB
Committed AS: 21636 kB
VmallocTotal: 507896 kB
VmallocUsed:   3896 kB
VmallocChunk: 503932 kB
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## show hardware pci

Displays information about the system peripheral component interconnect (PCI) bus.

### Syntax

```
show hardware pci [ detailed ]
```

### Parameters

**detailed**

Displays detailed information about the PCI bus.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to view information about the PCI bus. The PCI bus provides communication among the peripheral components and processor of the system.

### Examples

The following example shows PCI information on R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show hardware pci
00:00.0 Host bridge: Intel Corporation 440BX/ZX/DX - 82443BX/ZX/DX Host bridge (rev 01)
00:01.0 PCI bridge: Intel Corporation 440BX/ZX/DX - 82443BX/ZX/DX AGP bridge (rev 01)
00:07.0 ISA bridge: Intel Corporation 82371AB/EB/MB PIIX4 ISA (rev 08)
00:07.1 IDE interface: Intel Corporation 82371AB/EB/MB PIIX4 IDE (rev 01)
00:07.3 Bridge: Intel Corporation 82371AB/EB/MB PIIX4 ACPI (rev 08)
00:0f.0 VGA compatible controller: VMware Inc Abstract SVGA II Adapter
00:10.0 SCSI storage controller: LSI Logic / Symbios Logic 53c1030 PCI-X Fusion-MPT Dual Ultra320 SCSI
(rev 01)
00:11.0 Ethernet controller: Advanced Micro Devices [AMD] 79c970 [PCnet32 LANCE] (rev 10)
vyatta@R1:~$
```



## show history

Displays the command history of the system.

### Syntax

```
show history [ num | brief ]
```

### Command Default

The complete command history is displayed.

### Parameters

*num*

A specific number of recent commands.

**brief**

Displays the most recent 20 commands.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to view the command history of the system. If more than one screen of output is available, the : prompt appears. Press the <Space> key to display the next screen, <Enter> key to display the next line, or <q> key to stop the output.

### Examples

The following example shows history of command execution on R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show history
 1 2009-08-05T22:01:33+0000 configure
 2 2009-08-05T22:02:03+0000 commit
 3 2009-08-05T22:02:09+0000 exit
 4 2009-08-05T22:02:09+0000 exit
 5 2009-08-05T22:02:12+0000 exit
 6 2009-08-05T22:11:51+0000 show version
 7 2009-08-05T22:11:55+0000 configure
 8 2009-08-05T22:01:33+0000 configure
 9 2009-08-05T22:02:03+0000 commit
10 2009-08-05T22:02:09+0000 exit
11 2009-08-05T22:02:09+0000 exit
12 2009-08-05T22:02:12+0000 exit
13 2009-08-05T22:11:51+0000 show version
14 2009-08-05T22:11:55+0000 configure
15 2009-08-05T22:11:59+0000 show
16 2009-08-05T22:12:27+0000 show
17 2009-08-05T22:13:01+0000 set interfaces dataplane dp0p1p1 address 192.168.1.72/24
18 2009-08-05T22:13:12+0000 set service ssh
19 2009-08-05T22:13:33+0000 set system name-server 192.168.1.254
20 2009-08-05T22:13:58+0000 commit
21 2009-08-06T05:14:15+0000 show
:
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## show host

Displays host information for hosts that can be reached by the system.

### Syntax

```
show host { lookup hostname | lookup ipv4 | name | date | os }
```

### Parameters

**lookup** *hostname*

Shows the canonical name and IP address plus any configured aliases recorded in the name server for the host with the specified host name.

**lookup** *ipv4*

Shows the canonical name and IP address plus any configured aliases recorded in the name server for the host with the specified IP address.

**date**

Shows the date and time according to the system clock.

**name**

Shows the name of this system.

**os**

Shows details about the operating system of the system.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to view information configured for the host.

## Examples

The following example shows how to display information about the R2 host.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show host lookup R2
R2.vyatta.com      A      10.1.0.3
vyatta@R1:~$
```

The following example shows how to display the name of the R1 host.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show host name
R1
vyatta@R1:~$
```

The following example shows how to display the date and time according to the system clock.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show host date
Mon Jan 21 17:28:47 PST 2008
vyatta@R1:~$
```

The following example shows how to display information about the host operating system.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show host os
Linux R1 2.6.23-1-486-vyatta #1 SMP Tue Jan 15 02:00:31 PST 2008 i686
GNU/Linux
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## show ip groups

Displays IP groups status.

### Syntax

```
show ip groups
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

The following example shows how to display the status of IP forwarding.

```
vyatta@vyatta:~$ show ip groups
Active Internet connections (w/o servers)
Proto Recv-Q Send-Q Local Address Foreign Address State
tcp 0 0 127.0.0.1:5904 127.0.0.1:49746 ESTABLISHED
tcp 0 0 10.1.17.201:22 10.250.0.79:58689 ESTABLISHED
tcp 0 0 127.0.0.1:49746 127.0.0.1:5904 ESTABLISHED
tcp 0 0 127.0.0.1:5903 127.0.0.1:48562 ESTABLISHED
tcp 0 0 127.0.0.1:48562 127.0.0.1:5903 ESTABLISHED
IPv6/IPv4 Group Memberships
Interface RefCnt Group
-----
lo 1 224.0.0.1
dp0p160p1 1 224.0.0.1
.spathintf 1 224.0.0.1
```

## show interfaces

Displays information about system interfaces.

### Syntax

```
show interfaces [ counters | detail | system [ enabled ] ]
```

### Command Default

Displays information for all interfaces configured on the system.

### Parameters

#### counters

Displays summary information about all the interfaces available on your system.

#### detail

Displays detailed information about all the interfaces available on your system.

#### system

Displays all the physical interfaces available on your system.

#### enabled

Displays only enabled system interfaces known to the operating system kernel.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to view configuration information and operational status for interfaces and virtual interfaces.

When used with no option, this command displays information for all interfaces configured on the system. You can see specific information by using other versions of this command.

To see all the physical interfaces known to the operating system kernel, use the **system** option. This option differs from the other versions of this command; the other versions show interfaces that have been configured on the system, while the **system** option shows all the physical interfaces available on your system (that is, the physical interfaces known to the operating system kernel).

The physical interfaces available to you determine which interfaces you are able to configure and view because you cannot configure or view an interface that does not physically exist on the system.

## Examples

The following example shows how to display information for interfaces.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show interfaces
Codes: S - State, L - Link, u - Up, D - Down, A - Admin Down
Interface      IP Address      S/L  Description
-----
dp0p2p1        192.168.122.30/24  u/u
dp0p5p1        -                u/u
dp0p5p1.10     10.1.1.1/24      u/u
dp0port2       -                A/D
lo              127.0.0.1/8      u/u
               ::1/128
```

The following example shows how to display detailed information for interfaces.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show interfaces system enabled
1: lo: <LOOPBACK,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 65536 qdisc noqueue state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT group default
   link/loopback 00:00:00:00:00:00 brd 00:00:00:00:00:00 promiscuity 0
   RX: bytes  packets  errors  dropped  overrun  mcast
   70108352  432856  0       0       0       0
   TX: bytes  packets  errors  dropped  carrier  collsns
   70108352  432856  0       0       0       0
6: dp0p160p1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast state UP mode DORMANT group
default qlen 500
   link/ether 00:0c:29:2e:2a:d7 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
   tun
   RX: bytes  packets  errors  dropped  overrun  mcast
   38258251  588550  0       190834  0       566086
   TX: bytes  packets  errors  dropped  carrier  collsns
   982191    11700  0       0       0       0
7: dp0p192p1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast state UP mode DORMANT group
default qlen 500
   link/ether 00:0c:29:2e:2a:e1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
   tun
   RX: bytes  packets  errors  dropped  overrun  mcast
   120       2       0       3       0       0
   TX: bytes  packets  errors  dropped  carrier  collsns
   110       1       0       0       0       0
8: dp0p224p1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast state UP mode DORMANT group
default qlen 500
   link/ether 00:0c:29:2e:2a:eb brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
   tun
   RX: bytes  packets  errors  dropped  overrun  mcast
   120       2       0       0       0       0
   TX: bytes  packets  errors  dropped  carrier  collsns
   408       4       0       0       0       0
10: .spathintf: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
group default qlen 500
   link/ether 72:09:8f:fd:1e:38 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
   tun
   RX: bytes  packets  errors  dropped  overrun  mcast
   0         0       0       0       0       0
   TX: bytes  packets  errors  dropped  carrier  collsns
   408       4       0       0       0       0
```

## show interfaces extensive

Displays detailed information about all system interfaces.

### Syntax

```
show interfaces extensive
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to view detailed configuration information and operational status for all interfaces and virtual interfaces. In the output of this command where an interval is referenced, the average values are 1-minute-, 5-minute-, and 15-minute-weighted rolling average values computed in a manner similar to the values reported by Unix and Linux for load average in the uptime command.

#### NOTE

For better-formatted output and more complete information about an interface, use the **show interfaces dataplane** *interface-name* command.

## Examples

The following example shows how to display detailed information about all system interfaces.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show interfaces extensive
dp0p192p1:
  rx bad address: 0
  rx badcrc: 0
  rx bps: 24
  rx bridge: 0
  rx dropped: 0
  rx errors: 0
  rx flowmiss: 0
  rx good packets: 1246364
  rx missed: 0
  rx nobuffer: 0
  rx packets: 1246364
  rx pps avg: 0, 0, 0
  rx q0 errors: 0
  rx q1 bytes: 1891644
  rx q1 packets: 20907

  tx bps: 0
  tx bytes: 1941172
  tx error: 0
  tx good bytes: 1941172
  tx packets: 18897
  tx pps avg: 0, 0, 0
  tx q0 packets: 18692
  tx q1 packets: 0
  tx q2 packets: 205
  tx q3 packets: 0

  rx bad vid: 0
  rx badlen: 0
  rx bps avg: 62, 82, 83
  rx bytes: 132549906
  rx error: 0
  rx flowmatch: 0
  rx good bytes: 132549906
  rx mbuf allocation errors: 0
  rx multicast: 1225784
  rx non ip: 1081511
  rx pps: 0
  rx q0 bytes: 130658262
  rx q0 packets: 1225457
  rx q1 errors: 0
  rx vlan: 0

  tx bps avg: 5, 12, 9
  tx dropped: 0
  tx errors: 0
  tx good packets: 18897
  tx pps: 0
  tx q0 bytes: 1928872
  tx q1 bytes: 0
  tx q2 bytes: 12300
  tx q3 bytes: 0

dp0p224p1:
  rx bad address: 0
  rx badcrc: 0
  rx bps: 0
  rx bridge: 0
  rx dropped: 0
  rx errors: 0

  rx bad vid: 0
  rx badlen: 0
  rx bps avg: 0, 0, 0
  rx bytes: 120
  rx error: 0
  rx flowmatch: 0
...
```



## show license

Displays Vyatta license information.

## Syntax

```
show license
```

## Modes

Operational mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to view Vyatta license information.

## Examples

The following example shows how to display Vyatta license information.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show license
GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE
                    Version 2, June 1991

Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
                    51 Franklin St, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA
Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies
of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

                                Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your
freedom to share and change it.  By contrast, the GNU General Public
License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free
software--to make sure the software is free for all its users.  This
General Public License applies to most of the Free Software
Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to
using it.  (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by
the GNU Library General Public License instead.)  You can apply it to
your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not
price.  Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you
have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for
this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it
if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it
in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid
anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights.
These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you
distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it.
```

## show ntp

Shows the status of connections to a configured Network Time Protocol (NTP) server.

### Syntax

```
show ntp { host | ipv4 | O.vyatta.pool.ntp.org }
```

### Parameters

*host*

The host name of an NTP server.

*ipv4*

The IPv4 address of an NTP server.

**O.vyatta.pool.ntp.org**

Specifies the default NTP server.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to view the status of connections to a configured NTP server.

A line entry is given for each configured NTP server, showing the IP address of the server and how often the system is polling and updating to the NTP clock. An asterisk (\*) next to the IP address indicates successful synchronization with the NTP server.

NTP server connections are configured by using [system ntp server <server-name>](#) on page 148.

### Examples

The following example shows how to display the status of connections to all configured NTP servers (in this case, the 69.59.150.135 IP address).

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show ntp
remote          local      st poll reach  delay  offset  disp
=====
=69.59.150.135  192.168.1.92  3   64   1 0.04057 -0.281460 0.96825
vyatta@R1:~$
```

The following example shows how to display the status of connections to the configured NTP server at the 69.59.150.135 IP address.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show ntp 69.59.150.135
server 69.59.150.135, stratum 3, offset 46.614524, delay 0.03207
22 Jan 12:20:36 ntpdate[10192]: step time server 69.59.150.135 offset 46.614524 sec
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## show ntp packets

Displays the number of NTP packets sent and received. It also displays counts of packets that caused exceptional conditions.

### Syntax

```
show ntp packets
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display the number of NTP packets sent and received and counts of packets that caused various exceptional conditions.

### Examples

The following example shows how to display the number of NTP packets sent and received and counts of packets that caused exceptional conditions.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show ntp packets
  packets sent:           57
  packets not sent:       0
  packets received:       59
  packets processed:      54
  current version:        54
  previous version:       0
  declined:               0
  access denied:          0
  bad length or format:   0
  bad authentication:     0
  rate exceeded:          0
```

## show ntp status

Displays an overview of the NTP daemon and the peer to which the NTP server is synchronizing.

### Syntax

```
show ntp status
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display an overview of the NTP daemon and the peer to which the NTP server is synchronizing.

### Examples

The following example shows how to display an overview of the NTP daemon.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show ntp status
  system peer:      64.246.132.14
  system peer mode: client
  leap indicator:   11
  stratum:          2
  precision:        -23
  root distance:    0.12462 s
  root dispersion: 0.07733 s
  reference ID:     [64.246.132.14]
  reference time:   d8592b62.8bdfaa14 Thu, Jan 8 2015 16:14:26.546
  system flags:     auth monitor ntp kernel stats
  jitter:           0.003525 s

System clock is synchronized
```

## show ntp information

Displays version information for the NTP daemon and indicates if the process is running.

### Syntax

```
show ntp information
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display version information for the NTP daemon and to check whether the process is running.

### Examples

The following example shows how to display version information for the NTP daemon and check whether the process is running.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show ntp information
version 1:4.2.6.p5+dfsg-2+deb7u1+vyatta1+1420850908
NTP daemon is running
```

## show session-table statistics

Shows the data plane session table statistics.

### Syntax

```
show session-table statistics
```

### Modes

Operational and configuration mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to view information on the data plane session table.

### Examples

```
vyatta@vyatta% show session-table statistics
Available (percentage): 984064 (93.85%)
Used (percentage): 64512 (6.15%)
NATed: 64512
Detailed (by state):
TCP
  SYN SENT: 0
  SYN RECEIVED: 0
  ESTABLISHED: 0
  FIN WAIT: 0
  CLOSE WAIT: 0
  LAST ACK: 0
  TIME WAIT: 0
  CLOSE: 0
  LISTEN: 0
UDP
  NEW: 0
  ESTABLISHED: 64512
  CLOSE: 0
Other
  NEW: 0
  ESTABLISHED: 0
  CLOSE: 0
```

## show reboot

Shows the next scheduled reboot date and time.

## Syntax

```
show reboot
```

## Modes

Operational mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to view the next scheduled reboot date and time.

## Examples

The following example shows how to display the next scheduled reboot date and time.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show reboot
Reboot scheduled for [Sat Dec 12 20:23:00 2009]
vyatta@R1:~$
```

The following example shows that no reboot is scheduled.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show reboot
No reboot currently scheduled
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## show system boot-messages

Displays bootup messages generated by the kernel.

### Syntax

```
show system boot-messages [ all ]
```

### Command Default

A subset of the full list of kernel bootup messages is displayed.

### Parameters

**all**

Displays all kernel bootup messages.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to see bootup messages that have been generated by the kernel.

### Examples

The following example shows how to display bootup messages that have been generated by the kernel.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system boot-messages
Linux version 2.6.23-1-486-vyatta (autobuild@sydney) (gcc version 4.2.3 20071123 (prerelease) (Debian
4.2.2-4)) #1 SMP Fri Jan 18 07:17:50 PST 2008
BIOS-provided physical RAM map:
 BIOS-e820: 0000000000000000 - 000000000009f800 (usable)
 BIOS-e820: 000000000009f800 - 00000000000a0000 (reserved)
 BIOS-e820: 00000000000f0000 - 0000000000100000 (reserved)
 BIOS-e820: 0000000000100000 - 0000000001fee0000 (usable)
 BIOS-e820: 0000000001fee0000 - 0000000001fee3000 (ACPI NVS)
 BIOS-e820: 0000000001fee3000 - 0000000001fef0000 (ACPI data)
 BIOS-e820: 0000000001fef0000 - 0000000001ff00000 (reserved)
 BIOS-e820: 00000000fec00000 - 00000000100000000 (reserved)
0MB HIGHMEM available.
510MB LOWMEM available.
found SMP MP-table at 000f5a20
Entering add_active_range(0, 0, 130784) 0 entries of 256 used
Zone PFN ranges:
  DMA             0 ->      4096
  Normal          4096 ->   130784
  HighMem        130784 ->   130784
Movable zone start PFN for each node
early_node_map[1] active PFN ranges
 0:             0 ->   130784
On node 0 totalpages: 130784
:
```



## show system connections

Displays active network connections on the system.

### Syntax

```
show system connections
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to see which network connections are currently active on the network.

### Examples

The following example shows how to display active network connections on the system.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system connections
Active Internet connections (servers and established)
Proto Recv-Q Send-Q Local Address           Foreign Address         State
tcp        0      0 127.0.0.1:5903          0.0.0.0:*               LISTEN
tcp        0      0 127.0.0.1:5904          0.0.0.0:*               LISTEN
tcp        0      0 127.0.0.1:5907          0.0.0.0:*               LISTEN
tcp        0      0 0.0.0.0:53              0.0.0.0:*               LISTEN
tcp        0      0 0.0.0.0:22              0.0.0.0:*               LISTEN
tcp        0      0 127.0.0.1:5904          127.0.0.1:42165        ESTABLISHED
tcp        0      0 127.0.0.1:42165         127.0.0.1:5904         ESTABLISHED
tcp        0      0 127.0.0.1:48564         127.0.0.1:5903         ESTABLISHED
tcp        0      64 10.1.17.201:22          10.250.1.136:61388     ESTABLISHED
tcp        0      0 127.0.0.1:5903          127.0.0.1:48564        ESTABLISHED
tcp6       0      0 :::53                   :::*                     LISTEN
tcp6       0      0 :::22                    :::*                     LISTEN
udp        0      0 0.0.0.0:53              0.0.0.0:*               *
udp        0      0 10.1.17.201:123         0.0.0.0:*               *
udp        0      0 127.0.0.1:123           0.0.0.0:*               *
udp        0      0 0.0.0.0:123            0.0.0.0:*               *
udp6       0      0 :::53                    :::*                     *
udp6       0      0 fe80::ff:fe00:1:123     :::*                     *
udp6       0      0 fe80::250:56ff:fea9:123 :::*                     *
udp6       0      0 ::1:123                  :::*                     *
udp6       0      0 :::123                   :::*                     *
Active UNIX domain sockets (servers and established)
Proto RefCnt Flags               Type           State         I-Node   Path
unix   2      [ ACC ]                STREAM        LISTENING     9478     /var/run/vplane.socket
unix   2      [ ACC ]                STREAM        LISTENING     6702     /var/run/vcfgfs.sock
unix   2      [ ACC ]                STREAM        LISTENING    14164     /tmp/browser_pager
unix   2      [ ACC ]                STREAM        LISTENING     7765     /tmp/.rip_show
unix   2      [ ACC ]                STREAM        LISTENING     8796     /var/run/vyatta/vplanned.socket
unix   2      [ ACC ]                STREAM        LISTENING     7772     /tmp/.ripng_show
unix   2      [ ACC ]                STREAM        LISTENING     7779     /tmp/.ospf_show
unix   2      [ ACC ]                STREAM        LISTENING     7786     /tmp/.ospf6_show
unix   2      [ ACC ]                STREAM        LISTENING     6021     /tmp/.bgp_show
unix   2      [ ACC ]                STREAM        LISTENING     6793     /tmp/.imi_show
unix   2      [ ACC ]                STREAM        LISTENING     6797     /tmp/.imi_line
unix   2      [ ACC ]                STREAM        LISTENING     6811     /var/run/acpid.socket
unix   2      [ ACC ]                STREAM        LISTENING     8603     /tmp/.nsm_show
unix   2      [ ACC ]                STREAM        LISTENING     8607     /tmp/.nsmerv
<omitted>
```

## show system kernel-messages

Displays messages in the kernel ring buffer.

### Syntax

```
show system kernel-messages
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to see messages currently residing in the kernel ring buffer.

### Examples

The following example shows how to display messages in the kernel ring buffer.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system kernel-messages
Linux version 2.6.16 (autobuild@phuket.vyatta.com) (gcc version 4.1.1) #1 Tue Dec 5 15:56:41 PST 2006
BIOS-provided physical RAM map:
 BIOS-e820: 0000000000000000 - 0000000000009f800 (usable)
 BIOS-e820: 0000000000009f800 - 000000000000a0000 (reserved)
 BIOS-e820: 000000000000f0000 - 00000000000100000 (reserved)
 BIOS-e820: 00000000000100000 - 00000000000fee0000 (usable)
 BIOS-e820: 000000000fee0000 - 000000000fee3000 (ACPI NVS)
 BIOS-e820: 000000000fee3000 - 000000000fef0000 (ACPI data)
 BIOS-e820: 000000000fef0000 - 000000000ff00000 (reserved)
 BIOS-e820: 00000000fec00000 - 0000000100000000 (reserved)
0MB HIGHMEM available.
254MB LOWMEM available.
found SMP MP-table at 000f5a20
On node 0 totalpages: 65248
  DMA zone: 4096 pages, LIFO batch:0
  DMA32 zone: 0 pages, LIFO batch:0
  Normal zone: 61152 pages, LIFO batch:15
  HighMem zone: 0 pages, LIFO batch:0
DMI 2.3 present.
Intel MultiProcessor Specification v1.4
  Virtual Wire compatibility mode.
OEM ID: OEM00000 Product ID: PROD00000000 APIC at: 0xFEE00000
:
```

## show system memory

Displays system memory usage.

### Syntax

```
show system memory [ cache | detail ]
```

### Parameters

**cache**

Displays memory cache details.

**detail**

Displays memory usage details.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to see how much memory is currently being used by the system and how much is free.

## Examples

The following example shows information about memory usage on R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system memory
total      used      free    shared    buffers    cached
Mem:      242836    170796    72040         0     58844    81748
Swap:         0         0         0
Total:    242836    170796    72040
vyatta@R1:~$
```

The following example shows detailed information about memory usage on R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system memory detail
MemTotal:      242836 kB
MemFree:       72040 kB
Buffers:       58844 kB
Cached:        81760 kB
SwapCached:    0 kB
Active:        75496 kB
Inactive:      79252 kB
Active(anon):  14344 kB
Inactive(anon): 264 kB
Active(file):  61152 kB
Inactive(file): 78988 kB
Unevictable:   0 kB
Mlocked:       0 kB
HighTotal:     0 kB
HighFree:      0 kB
LowTotal:      242836 kB
LowFree:       72040 kB
SwapTotal:     0 kB
SwapFree:      0 kB
Dirty:         0 kB
Writeback:     0 kB
AnonPages:     14172 kB
Mapped:        7464 kB
:
```

The following example shows information about memory cache usage on R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system memory cache
Active / Total Objects (% used) : 99681 / 100958 (98.7%)
Active / Total Slabs (% used)   : 2690 / 2690 (100.0%)
Active / Total Caches (% used)  : 61 / 72 (84.7%)
Active / Total Size (% used)    : 12081.72K / 12346.32K (97.9%)
Minimum / Average / Maximum Object : 0.01K / 0.12K / 8.00K

  OBJS ACTIVE  USE OBJ SIZE  SLABS OBJ/SLAB  CACHE SIZE NAME
30806 30806 100%  0.05K   422     73   1688K buffer_head
19200 19178 99%   0.13K   640     30   2560K dentry
 9010  8954 99%   0.05K   106     85   424K sysfs_dir_cache
 7168  7054 98%   0.01K    14    512    56K kmalloc-8
 4864  4853 99%   0.02K    19    256    76K kmalloc-16
 2816  2693 95%   0.03K    22    128    88K kmalloc-32
 2640  2640 100%  0.38K   264     10   1056K unionfs_inode_cache
 2380  2213 92%   0.02K    14    170    56K anon_vma_chain
 2322  2322 100%  0.44K   258     9   1032K squashfs_inode_cache
 2255  2248 99%   0.34K   205     11    820K inode_cache
 2210  2199 99%   0.05K    26     85   104K ext3_xattr
 1886  1884 99%   0.09K    41     46   164K vm_area_struct
 1664  1512 90%   0.12K    52     32   208K kmalloc-128
 1536  1470 95%   0.06K    24     64    96K kmalloc-64
 1536  1433 93%   0.02K     6    256    24K anon_vma
 1313  1308 99%   0.29K   101     13   404K radix_tree_node
:
```

## show system power-profile

Displays the current power profile settings.

### Syntax

```
show system power-profile
```

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **show** form of this command to display the power profile settings.

### Examples

#### Examples

The following example shows how to display the power profile settings.

```
vyatta@R1# run show system power-profile  
balanced (100, 10, 250)
```

## show system processes

Displays information about processes currently running on the system.

### Syntax

```
show system processes [ extensive | summary | tree ]
```

### Command Default

Lists all processes currently running on the system.

### Parameters

**extensive**

Shows all processes and extensive details about each process.

**summary**

Shows a summary of system usage.

**tree**

Shows all processes and how they are related.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to see information about processes currently running on the system.

## Examples

The following example shows how to display a list of all processes currently running on the system.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system processes
PID TTY      STAT     TIME COMMAND
  1 ?        Ss       0:03  init [2]
  2 ?        S        0:00  [kthreadd]
  3 ?        S        0:00  [ksoftirqd/0]
  4 ?        S        0:00  [migration/0]
  5 ?        S        0:00  [watchdog/0]
  6 ?        S        0:09  [events/0]
  7 ?        S        0:00  [khelper]
 12 ?        S        0:00  [async/mgr]
 13 ?        S        0:00  [pm]
 99 ?        S        0:00  [sync_supers]
101 ?        S        0:00  [bdi-default]
102 ?        S        0:00  [kintegrityd/0]
104 ?        S        0:00  [kblockd/0]
106 ?        S        0:00  [kacpid]
107 ?        S        0:00  [kacpi_notify]
108 ?        S        0:00  [kacpi_hotplug]
174 ?        S        0:00  [khubd]
177 ?        S        0:00  [kseriod]
299 ?        S        0:00  [khungtaskd]
300 ?        S        0:00  [kswapd0]
353 ?        S        0:00  [aio/0]
361 ?        S        0:00  [unionfs_siod/0]
:
```

The following example shows how to display extensive information about all processes currently running on the system.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system processes extensive
top - 08:23:47 up 13:28,  2 users,  load average: 0.12, 0.03, 0.01
Tasks: 72 total,  1 running, 71 sleeping,  0 stopped,  0 zombie
Cpu(s):  0.0%us,  0.2%sy,  0.0%ni, 99.8%id,  0.0%wa,  0.0%hi,  0.0%si,  0.0%st
Mem:   242836k total,  170488k used,   72348k free,   58752k buffers
Swap:   0k total,    0k used,    0k free,   81440k cached

  PID USER      PR  NI  VIRT  RES  SHR  S  %CPU  %MEM    TIME+  COMMAND
 3515 vyatta    20   0  2372  984  768  R   1.8   0.4   0:00.06 top
   1 root      20   0  2076  680  584  S   0.0   0.3   0:03.79 init
   2 root      20   0   0    0   0   S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 kthreadd
   3 root      20   0   0    0   0   S   0.0   0.0   0:00.98 ksoftirqd/0
   4 root      RT   0   0    0   0   S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 migration/0
   5 root      RT   0   0    0   0   S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 watchdog/0
   6 root      20   0   0    0   0   S   0.0   0.0   0:09.69 events/0
   7 root      20   0   0    0   0   S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 khelper
  12 root      20   0   0    0   0   S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 async/mgr
  13 root      20   0   0    0   0   S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 pm
  99 root      20   0   0    0   0   S   0.0   0.0   0:00.12 sync_supers
101 root      20   0   0    0   0   S   0.0   0.0   0:00.27 bdi-default
102 root      20   0   0    0   0   S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 kintegrityd/0
104 root      20   0   0    0   0   S   0.0   0.0   0:00.05 kblockd/0
106 root      20   0   0    0   0   S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 kacpid
107 root      20   0   0    0   0   S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 kacpi_notify
:
```

The following example shows how to display all processes that are currently running and how they are related.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system processes tree
PID  PGID  SID  TTY      TIME CMD
  2    0    0 ?        00:00:00 kthreadd
  3    0    0 ?        00:00:00 ksoftirqd/0
  4    0    0 ?        00:00:00 migration/0
  5    0    0 ?        00:00:00 watchdog/0
  6    0    0 ?        00:00:09 events/0
  7    0    0 ?        00:00:00 khelper
 12    0    0 ?        00:00:00 async/mgr
 13    0    0 ?        00:00:00 pm
```

```
99      0      0 ?      00:00:00  sync_supers
101     0      0 ?      00:00:00  bdi-default
102     0      0 ?      00:00:00  kintegrityd/0
104     0      0 ?      00:00:00  kblockd/0
106     0      0 ?      00:00:00  kacpid
107     0      0 ?      00:00:00  kacpi_notify
108     0      0 ?      00:00:00  kacpi_hotplug
174     0      0 ?      00:00:00  khubd
177     0      0 ?      00:00:00  kseriod
299     0      0 ?      00:00:00  khungtaskd
300     0      0 ?      00:00:00  kswapd0
353     0      0 ?      00:00:00  aio/0
361     0      0 ?      00:00:00  unionfs_slod/0
363     0      0 ?      00:00:00  crypto/0
:
```



## show system routing-daemons

Displays a list of active routing daemons.

### Syntax

```
show system routing-daemons
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display a list of active routing daemons.

### Examples

The following example shows how to display a list of active routing daemons.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system routing-daemons  
zebra ripd ripngd ospfd ospf6d bgpd
```

## show system storage

Displays system file usage and available storage space.

### Syntax

```
show system storage
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to see how much storage space is currently being used by the system and how much is free.

### Examples

The following example shows file system usage information for R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system storage
Filesystem      Size  Used Avail Use% Mounted on
rootfs          953M  287M  618M  32% /
udev            10M   28K   10M   1% /dev
/dev/hda1       953M  287M  618M  32% /
/dev/hda1       953M  287M  618M  32% /dev/.static/dev
tmpfs           126M   4.0K  126M   1% /dev/shm
/dev/hda2       9.7M   1.5M   7.8M  17% /config
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## show system uptime

Displays information on how long the system has been running.

### Syntax

```
show system uptime
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to see how long the system has been running, the number of users currently logged in, and the average system load.

### Examples

The following example shows file system usage information for R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system uptime
20:45:59 up 3:04, 2 users, load average: 0.00, 0.00, 0.00
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## show system usb

Displays which peripherals are connected to the USB bus.

### Syntax

```
show system usb
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to see which peripherals are connected to the USB bus.

### Examples

The following example shows system USB information for R1.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show system usb
Bus 001 Device 002: ID 0d49:7212 Maxtor
Bus 001 Device 001: ID 1d6b:0001 Linux Foundation 1.1 root hub
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## show tech-support

Displays a consolidated report of system information.

### Syntax

```
show tech-support [ brief ] [ save [ filename ] | save-uncompressed [ filename ] ]
```

### Command Default

Information is sent to the console.

### Parameters

#### brief

Displays a summary of **show version**, **show configuration**, **show interfaces**, **show ip route**, and **show log** commands.

#### save

Saves the support information to a compressed (.gz) file. The file name takes the format *hostname* **tech-support** *timestamp* **gz**, where *hostname* is the host name configured for the Vyatta device and *timestamp* is the time the file was saved in the format *YYYY-MM-DD-hhmmss*.

For local files, a rotation mechanism limits the number of output files to 100; that is, creating a file after the first 100 files causes the oldest file to be deleted.

#### save-uncompressed

Saves the support information to an uncompressed file. The file name takes the format *hostname* **tech-support** *timestamp*, where *hostname* is the host name configured for the Vyatta device and *timestamp* is the time the file was saved in the format *YYYY-MM-DD-hhmmss*.

For local files, a rotation mechanism limits the number of output files to 100; that is, creating a file after the first 100 files causes the oldest file to be deleted.

#### filename

The name of a file to which to save the support information. Refer to "Usage Guidelines" for details.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display a technical report that provides consolidated information about system components and configuration.

#### NOTE

Only administrative (admin)-level users can run the command.

This information is valuable for debugging and diagnosing system issues. You should provide the technical report whenever you open a case with Brocade technical support.

Technical support information can be saved to a hard disk (including a Flash disk or USB device), an FTP server, or an SCP server.

The default local technical support directory is `/config/support`.

If a file name is specified, the support information is saved to the `filename.hostname.tech-support.timestamp` file, where `hostname` is the host name configured for the Vyatta device and `timestamp` is the time the file was saved.

If an absolute path is prefixed to the file name, the file is saved in that location. Otherwise, the file is saved to a location relative to the default path, which is the `/config/support` directory. An FTP or SCP server can also be specified.

The following table shows how to specify the syntax for files from different file locations.

**TABLE 27** Specifying locations for the file

Location	Specification
An absolute path	Use standard UNIX file specification.
A relative path	Specify the path name relative to the default directory.
FTP server	Use the following syntax for <i>filename</i> :  <code>ftp://user:passwd@host/file</code>  where <i>user</i> is the user name on the host, <i>passwd</i> is the password associated with the user name, <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the FTP server, and <i>file</i> is the file name, including the path.
SCP server	Use the following syntax for <i>filename</i> :  <code>scp://user:passwd@host/file</code>  where <i>user</i> is the user name on the host, <i>passwd</i> is the password associated with the user name, <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the SCP server, and <i>file</i> is the file name, including the path.

## Examples

The following example shows how to display a technical report of consolidated system information.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show tech-support
-----
Show Tech-Support
-----
CONFIGURATION
-----
Vyatta Version and Package Changes
-----
Version:      999.larkspurse.06200031
Description:  999.larkspurse.06200031
Copyright:    2006-2010 Vyatta, Inc.
Built by:     autobuild@vyatta.com
Built on:     Sun Jun 20 07:31:17 UTC 2010
Build ID:     1006200731-27ea461
Boot via:     image
Uptime:       16:28:05 up  9:56,  1 user,  load average: 0.00, 0.00, 0.00
-----
Configuration File
-----
interfaces {
    dataplane dp0p1p1 {
        address 192.168.1.82/24
        duplex auto
    }
}
```

## show version

Displays information about the versions of system software.

### Syntax

```
show version [ all | added | deleted | downgraded | upgraded ]
```

### Command Default

A brief summary of version information is shown. Detailed information about constituent packages is not shown.

### Parameters

#### all

Displays all packages that have been added, deleted, downgraded, or upgraded since the last baseline version upgrade.

#### added

Displays all packages that have been added since the last baseline version upgrade.

#### deleted

Displays all packages that have been deleted since the last baseline version upgrade.

#### downgraded

Displays all packages that have been downgraded since the last baseline version upgrade.

#### upgraded

Displays all packages that have been upgraded since the last baseline version upgrade.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to see what package changes have occurred since the last time a full version upgrade was performed.

The information shown always relates to the last full version upgrade. Therefore, the following conditions apply.

- Immediately after a full version upgrade, entering the **show version all** command shows no changes.
- If a package is added after upgrading, entering a **show version all** shows the added package.
- However, if the added package is then deleted again, entering a **show version all** shows no change because the system is now in the same state as it is immediately after the full version upgrade.

Keep in mind that if you delete a package, packages that depend on the deleted package are also removed.

## Examples

The following example shows how to display a summary of version information.

```
vyatta@vyatta:~$ show version
Version : 888.islavista
Copyright: 2006-2008 Vyatta, Inc.
Built by : root@vyatta.com
Built on : Tue Oct 28 11:25:54 UTC 2008
Build ID : 2008-10-28-0749-f64e188
Boot via : livecd
Uptime : 01:29:58 up 1:30, 2 users, load average: 0.00, 0.00, 0.00
vyatta@vyatta:~$
```

The following example shows how to display version information for all software that has been added, deleted, upgraded, and downgraded since the last baseline upgrade.

```
vyatta@vyatta:~$ show version all
Version : 888.islavista
Copyright: 2006-2008 Vyatta, Inc.
Built by : root@vyatta.com
Built on : Tue Oct 28 11:25:54 UTC 2008
Build ID : 2008-10-28-0749-f64e188
Boot via : livecd
Uptime : 01:29:58 up 1:30, 2 users, load average: 0.00, 0.00, 0.00
```

```
ADDED:
Aii aptitude 0.4.4-4
Aii libc6 2.3.6.ds1-13
Aii libdb4.4 4.4.20-8
Aii libexpat1 1.95.8-3.4
Aii libncurses5 5.5-5
Aii libnetaddr-ip-perl 3.14-2
Aii libpam0g 0.79-4
Aii libsasl2 2.1.22.dfsg1-8
Aii libtasn1-3 0.3.6-2
Aii libwrap0 7.6.dbs-13
Aii snmp 5.2.3-7
Aii supported-version 2.2
:
```

The following example shows how to display version information about software that has been added since the last baseline upgrade.

```
vyatta@vyatta:~$ show version added
Version : 888.islavista
Copyright: 2006-2008 Vyatta, Inc.
Built by : root@vyatta.com
Built on : Tue Oct 28 11:25:54 UTC 2008
Build ID : 2008-10-28-0749-f64e188
Boot via : livecd
Uptime : 01:29:58 up 1:30, 2 users, load average: 0.00, 0.00, 0.00
```

```
ADDED:
Aii aptitude 0.4.4-4
Aii libc6 2.3.6.ds1-13
Aii libdb4.4 4.4.20-8
Aii libexpat1 1.95.8-3.4
Aii libncurses5 5.5-5
Aii libnetaddr-ip-perl 3.14-2
Aii libpam0g 0.79-4
Aii libsasl2 2.1.22.dfsg1-8
Aii libtasn1-3 0.3.6-2
Aii libwrap0 7.6.dbs-13
Aii snmp 5.2.3-7
Aii supported-version 2.2
Aii sysvinit 2.86.ds1-38
Aii tasksel 2.66
Aii vyatta-bgp 1.4-9
```



```
Aii vyatta-cli 2.1.1-9
Aii vyatta-config-migrate 2.1.1-4
Aii vyatta-dhcp-support 2.1.1-4
Aii vyatta-firewall 1.4-9
Aii vyatta-nat 2.1.1-5
Aii vyatta-nat-cli 2.1.1-4
Aii vyatta-nat-xorp 2.1.1-3
Aii vyatta-ospf 1.4-9
Aii vyatta-rip 1.4-9
Aii vyatta-xg 1.4-9
Aii zliblg 1.2.3-13
:
```

## system alg ftp

Configures tracking of FTP connections.

### Syntax

```
set system alg ftp { disable | port port-number }
```

```
delete system alg ftp port port-number
```

```
show system alg ftp port port-number
```

### Command Default

FTP connection tracking is enabled.

### Parameters

#### disable

Disables tracking of FTP connections.

#### port *port-number*

Specifies a control port for the tracking of FTP connections.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  alg {
    ftp {
      disable
      port port-number
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to configure tracking of FTP connections.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove a port from the tracking of FTP connections.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the configuration of FTP connection tracking.

## system alg icmp disable

Disables tracking of ICMP connections.

### Syntax

```
set system alg icmp disable
delete system alg icmp disable
show system alg icmp disable
```

### Command Default

ICMP connection tracking is enabled.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
    alg {
        icmp {
            disable
        }
    }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

ALGs work as helpers for the NAT system for a specified protocol. ALGs are enabled by default when NAT is enabled. Disabling an ALG may result in NAT not being performed correctly for the specified protocol.

Use the **set** form of this command to disable ICMP connection tracking.

Use the **delete** form of this command to reenable ICMP connection tracking.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the configuration of ICMP connection tracking.

## system console device <device>

Defines a specified device as the system console.

### Syntax

**set system console device** *device* [ **speed** *speed* ] [ **modem** ]

**delete system console device** *device* [ **speed** ] [ **modem** ]

**show system console device** *device*

### Command Default

The serial port device (**ttySO**) is configured with a speed of **9600**.

### Parameters

*device*

Multi-node. The name of a console device. The device name is one of the following:

**ttySN**: Serial device name

**ttyUSBX**: USB serial device name

**hvc0**: Xen console

**ttySO**: Serial port device

*speed*

The speed (baud rate) of the console device. The speed is one of the following: **1200**, **2400**, **4800**, **9600**, **19200**, **38400**, **57600**, or **115200**. The default speed is **9600**.

**modem**

Indicates that the port is connected to the serial console through a Hayes compatible modem.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  console {
    device device {
      speed speed
      modem
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify a device as the system console.

Changes take effect the next time a user logs in through the device and not when the configuration is committed.

Standard VGA consoles (tty0 through tty9) always exist and are not controlled by this configuration.

Bootup messages are limited to the serial port device (ttyS0). Other consoles can be configured but do not receive these messages.

Changing the speed of serial devices does not affect the system BIOS.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify a device as the system console.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove a system console device.

Use the **show** form of this command to view system console configuration.

## system console powersave

Saves power when a blank screen appears on the VGA console.

### Syntax

**set system console powersave**

**delete system console powersave**

**show system console**

### Command Default

Power is not saved.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {  
    console {  
        powersave  
    }  
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to save power when a blank screen appears on the VGA console. After 15 minutes of inactivity the screen goes blank. After 60 minutes, the monitor powers down.

Use the **set** form of this command to save power when a blank screen appears on the console.

Use the **delete** form of this command to return the system to its default behavior, that is, power is not saved.

Use the **show** form of this command to view console configuration.

## system default dataplane cpu-affinity <cpu-list>

Assigns a range or list of CPUs to the affinity on the default data plane.

### Syntax

```
set system default dataplane cpu-affinity cpu-list
delete system default dataplane [ cpu-affinity [ cpu-list ] ]
show system default dataplane [ cpu-affinity ]
```

### Parameters

*cpu-list*

The CPU IDs assigned to the affinity. Enter a range of numbers separated by a hyphen or a comma-separated list. The first CPU is 0. At least two CPUs must be assigned.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  default dataplane {
    cpu-affinity cpu-list
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

#### NOTE

Misconfiguration of CPU affinity may adversely affect the performance of the vRouter.

By default, all CPUs are used.

To display the number of CPUs available for the data plane, use [show hardware cpu](#) on page 101.

The CPU ID does not have to exist in the system where the data plane is running. For example, if you configure **cpu-affinity** with a range of **0-3** and the data plane is running on a two CPU system, then the data plane only uses CPUs 0 and 1 and silently ignores the other CPUs in the affinity.

If **cpu-affinity** is out of the range of the available CPUs in the data plane environment, for example, if you configure **cpu-affinity** with a range of **4-7** on a two CPU system, then an ERROR priority system message is logged and the data plane is not started.

Use the **set** form of this command to define the CPU affinity list for the default data plane.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove CPU affinity list for the default data plane.

Use the **show** form of this command to view the CPU affinity list for the default data plane.

## system domain-name <domain>

Establishes a domain name for the system.

### Syntax

**set system domain-name** *domain*

**delete system domain-name**

**show system domain-name**

### Parameters

*domain*

Mandatory. A name for the domain in which the system resides. The format of the name is a character string that contains letters, numbers, hyphens (-), and one period; for example, brocade.com. A domain name can have a maximum of 253 characters.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
    domain-name domain
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to establish a domain name for the system.

Note that both the **system domain-name** and **system domain-search domain** commands cannot be configured simultaneously; they are mutually exclusive.

Use the **set** form of this command to establish the domain name to be used by the system.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove a domain name.

Use the **show** form of this command to display a domain name.



## system domain-search domain <domain>

Defines a set of domains for domain completion.

### Syntax

```
set system domain-search domain domain
delete system domain-search domain domain
show system domain-search domain
```

### Parameters

*domain*

Mandatory. Multi-node. A domain name to be added to or deleted from the list of domains in the search order string. The format of the name is a character string that contains letters, numbers, hyphens (-), and one period; for example, brocade.com. A domain name can have a maximum of 253 characters. You can specify up to six domains by creating up to six **domain-search** multi-nodes.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  domain-search {
    domain domain
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to list up to 6 domains to be searched in DNS lookup requests.

When the system receives an unqualified host name, it attempts to form a Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) by appending the domains in this list to the host name. The system tries each domain name in turn, in the order in which they were configured. If none of the resulting FQDNs succeeds, the name is not resolved and an error is reported.

Note that both the **system domain-name** and **system domain-search domain** commands cannot be configured simultaneously; they are mutually exclusive.

Use the **set** form of this command to add a domain name to the search list. Note that you cannot use **set** to change a domain name in the list. To replace an incorrect domain name, delete and replace it with a new name.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove a name from a list of domain names.

Use the **show** form of this command to view a list of domain names.

## system host-name <name>

Establishes the host name for the system.

### Syntax

**set system host-name** *name*

**delete system host-name**

**show system host-name**

### Command Default

By default, the host name is preconfigured to **vyatta**. If you delete the host name, or if you delete the **system** node, the default name is restored.

### Parameters

*name*

A name you want to give to the system. The name can contain only letters, numbers, and hyphens (-).

The default name is **vyatta**. If you delete the host name, or if you try to delete the **system** node, the host name reverts to the default name of **vyatta**.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
    host-name name
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to establish a host name for the system.

When you establish the name, the command prompt changes to reflect the new host name. To see the change in the prompt, you must log out of the system shell and log back in again.

Use the **set** form of this command to establish or change the host name.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default host name of **vyatta**.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the host name.

## system name-server <address>

Specifies a Domain Name System (DNS) name server for the system.

### Syntax

**set** system name-server *address*

**delete** system name-server *address*

**show** system name-server

### Parameters

*address*

Multi-node. The IPv4 or IPv6 address of a DNS name server to use for local name query requests.

You can specify multiple DNS name servers by creating multiple instances of the name-server configuration node.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  name-server address
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to a DNS for the system.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify a name server for the system. Note that you cannot modify the entry of a DNS name server by using the **set** command. To replace an entry, delete it and create a new entry.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove a name server.

Use the **show** form of this command to view the name servers that have been specified.

## system ntp server <server-name>

Specifies a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server to use when synchronizing the system clock.

### Syntax

```
set system ntp server server [ address-family | dynamic | keyid | noselect | preempt | prefer ]
delete system ntp server server [ address-family | dynamic | keyid | noselect | preempt | prefer ]
show system ntp server
```

### Command Default

By default, the system uses the NTP server at O.vyatta.pool.ntp.org.

### Parameters

#### *server*

Multi-node. The IP address or host name of an NTP server. The system automatically obtains the system date and time from the specified server or servers.

You can specify multiple NTP servers by creating multiple instances of the ntp server configuration node.

#### address-family

Address family for hostname resolution.

#### dynamic

Allows to configure the server even if it is not reachable.

#### key-id

NTP authentication key ID.

#### noselect

Marks the server as unused.

#### preempt

Specifies the association as preemptable rather than the default persistent.

#### prefer

Marks the server as preferred.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  ntp {
    server server {
      address-family
      dynamic
      key-id
      noselect
      preempt
      prefer
    }
  }
}
```

```
}
}
```

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify an NTP server for the system.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify an NTP server for the system. Note that you cannot modify an NTP server entry by using the **set** command. To replace an entry, delete it and create a new entry.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove an NTP server.

Use the **show** form of this command to view the NTP servers that have been specified.

## Examples

This example describes mark a NTP server 10.18.191.203 as the preferred server.

```
vyatta@Rn# set system ntp server 10.18.191.203 prefer
vyatta@Rn# show system ntp server
server 10.18.191.203 {
    prefer
```

## system power-profile policy <thresholds>

Creates the idle, minimum sleep time, and maximum sleep time thresholds for a power profile.

### Syntax

```
set system power-profile policy [ balanced | power-save | low-latency ]
```

```
delete system power-profile policy [ balanced | power-save | low-latency ]
```

```
show system power-profile policy [ balanced | power-save | low-latency ]
```

### Command Default

The default setting is **balanced**.

### Parameters

#### **balanced**

Provides the best overall performance, but adds latency to the handling of the initial packet in a burst.

#### **power-save**

The polling parameters are adjusted to optimize the utilization of the CPU, but adds latency to the initial packet.

#### **low-latency**

The polling parameters are adjusted to optimize for low packet latency at the expense of CPU utilization.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Usage Guidelines

This command allows administrators to adjust the idle threshold, minimum sleep time, and maximum sleep time.

The data plane determines how long the CPU core sleeps between polls for packets based on how busy the CPU core has been. When the CPU sees multiple packets when polling a device, it considers itself busy and cuts the sleep time in half. If the CPU has not seen any packets in the given interval, it considers itself idle and increases the sleep interval by one microsecond.

Use the **set** form of this command to create policy settings for a power profile.

Use the **delete** form of this command to delete the policy settings for a power profile.

Use the **show** form of this command to show the policy settings for a power profile.

## system power-profile custom <parameter> <threshold>

Creates the thresholds for a custom policy of a power profile.

### Syntax

```
set system power-profile custom parameter [ idle-threshold microseconds | min-sleep microseconds | max-sleep microseconds ]
```

```
delete system power-profile custom parameter [ idle-threshold | min-sleep | max-sleep ]
```

```
show system power-profile custom parameter [ idle-threshold | min-sleep | max-sleep ]
```

### Parameters

**idle-threshold** *microseconds*

Sets the idle threshold in microseconds.

**min-sleep** *microseconds*

Sets the minimum sleep time in microseconds.

**max-sleep** *microseconds*

Sets the maximum sleep time in microseconds.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to create thresholds for a custom policy of a power profile.

Use the **delete** form of this command to delete the thresholds for a custom policy of a power profile.

Use the **show** form of this command to show the thresholds for a custom policy of a power profile.

## system ntp server <server-name> address-family

Specifies the address family for a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server.

### Syntax

```
set system ntp server server address-family [ ipv4 | ipv6 ]
delete system ntp server server address-family [ ipv4 | ipv6 ]
show system ntp server
```

### Command Default

By default, the system uses the NTP server at 0.vyatta.pool.ntp.org. If no address family is specified then the address selection is determined by the resolver.

### Parameters

*server*

Multi-node. The IP address or host name of an NTP server. The system automatically obtains the system date and time from the specified server or servers.

You can specify multiple NTP servers by creating multiple instances of the ntp server configuration node.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  ntp {
    server server
      address-family ipv4
      address-family ipv6
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify the address family for an NTP server.

When specified, the address-family parameter forces the name resolution to choose an IP address within that family. This is useful when both A and AAAA records exist in DNS for the same host name.

#### NOTE

Time servers in the second address pool, 2.vyatta.pool.ntp.org, have IPv6 connectivity.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify the address family for a NTP server.

You cannot modify an NTP server entry by using the **set** command; to replace an entry, delete it and create a new entry.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove an NTP server.

Use the **show** form of this command to view the NTP servers that have been specified.



## system options reboot-on-panic <value>

Specifies whether to reboot the system if a kernel panic occurs.

### Syntax

**set system options reboot-on-panic** *value*

**delete system options reboot-on-panic**

**show system options reboot-on-panic**

### Command Default

The system reboots (**true**).

### Parameters

*value*

Mandatory. Indicates whether the system should automatically reboot if a kernel panic occurs. The value is one of the following:

**true**—Reboots the system

**false**—Does not reboot the system

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  options {
    reboot-on-panic value
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Configuring the system not to reboot on kernel panic allows you to examine information that might help you determine the cause of the panic.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify whether to reboot the system if a kernel panic occurs.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore default behavior, that is, the system reboots.

Use the **show** form of this command to view configuration for this option.

## system session table-size <size>

Sets the maximum size of the connection-tracking table.

### Syntax

**set system session table-size** *number*

**delete system session table-size**

**show system session table-size**

### Command Default

1,048,576

### Parameters

*number*

The maximum number of entries allowed in the connection-tracking table. The number ranges from 1 to 100000000.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    table-size number {
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the maximum size of the connection-tracking table.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default size of the connection-tracking table.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the table size.

When you configure connection synchronization on a 5600 vRouter, the maximum number of session entries that you can configure is 200000 when the system memory is 4G, or 100000 entries when the system memory is 2G.

## system session timeout custom rule rule-number destination

Specifies destination parameters for custom session timeout.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout custom rule *rule-number* destination { address *address* | port *port-number* }

**delete** system session timeout custom rule *rule-number*

**show** system session timeout custom rule *rule-number*

### Parameters

*rule-number*

Number to identify the custom rule. The rules are evaluated in numeric order. The first match is used to apply the timeout value.

*address*

Destination IP address, subnet, or address group.

*port*

Destination port or port group.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      custom {
        rule rule-number {
          destination {
            address address
            port port
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify custom destination parameters for session timeouts.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify custom parameters.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove custom settings.

Use the **show** form of this command to view the current settings.

## system session timeout custom rule rule-number expire

Specifies custom session expiration time.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout custom rule *rule-number* **expire** *time*

**delete** system session timeout custom rule *rule-number*

**show** system session timeout custom rule *rule-number*

### Parameters

*rule-number*

Number to identify the custom rule. The rules are evaluated in numeric order. The first match is used to apply the timeout value.

*time*

Interval after which the session expires (1-21474836 seconds).

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      custom {
        rule rule-number {
          expire time
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify custom session expiration time.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify custom parameters.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove custom settings.

Use the **show** form of this command to view the current settings.

## system session timeout custom rule rule-number protocol

Specifies the protocol to match for custom session timeout.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout custom rule *rule-number* protocol *string*

**delete** system session timeout custom rule *rule-number*

**show** system session timeout custom rule *rule-number*

### Parameters

*rule-number*

Number to identify the custom rule. The rules are evaluated in numeric order. The first match is used to apply the timeout value.

*string*

Protocol to match (alphanumeric string).

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      custom {
        rule rule-number {
          protocol string
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify a protocol to match for custom session timeout.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify custom parameters.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove custom settings.

Use the **show** form of this command to view the current settings.

## system session timeout custom rule rule-number source

Specifies source parameters for custom session timeout.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout custom rule *rule-number* source { address *address* | port *port-number* }

**delete** system session timeout custom rule *rule-number*

**show** system session timeout custom rule *rule-number*

### Parameters

*rule-number*

Number to identify the custom rule. The rules are evaluated in numeric order. The first match is used to apply the timeout value.

*address*

Destination IP address, subnet, or address group.

*port*

Destination port or port group.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```

system {
  session {
    timeout {
      custom {
        rule rule-number {
          source {
            address address
            port port
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}

```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify custom source parameters for session timeouts.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify custom parameters.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove custom settings.

Use the **show** form of this command to view the current settings.

## system session timeout icmp established

Sets the timeout for ICMP connections that are in the “established” state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout icmp established *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout icmp established

**show** system session timeout icmp established

### Command Default

60 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, that an ICMP connection waits in the “established” state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 through 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      icmp {
        established timeout {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for ICMP connections that are in the “established” state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.

## system session timeout icmp new

Sets the timeout for ICMP connections that are in the “new” state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout icmp new *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout icmp new

**show** system session timeout icmp new

### Command Default

30 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, that an ICMP connection waits in the “new” state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 through 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      icmp {
        new timeout {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for ICMP connections that are in the “new” state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.



## system session timeout other established

Defines the timeout for connections that use protocols other than ICMP, TCP, or UDP and are in the "established" state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout other established *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout other established

**show** system session timeout other established

### Command Default

60 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, that a connection waits in the "established" state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 to 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      other {
        established timeout {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for connections that use protocols other than ICMP, TCP, and UDP and are in the "established state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.

## system session timeout other new

Sets the timeout for connections that use protocols other than ICMP, TCP, and UDP and are in the "new" state.

### Syntax

**set system session timeout other new** *timeout*

**delete system session timeout other new**

**show system session timeout other new**

### Command Default

30 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, that a connection waits in the "new" state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 through 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      other {
        new timeout {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for connections that use protocols other than ICMP, TCP, or UDP and are in the "new" state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.

## system session timeout tcp close-wait

Sets the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "close-wait" state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout tcp close-wait *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout tcp close-wait

**show** system session timeout tcp close-wait

### Command Default

21,600 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, that a TCP connection waits in the "close-wait" state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 through 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      tcp {
        close-wait size {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "close-wait" state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.

## system session timeout tcp closed

Sets the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "closed" state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout tcp closed *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout tcp closed

**show** system session timeout tcp closed

### Command Default

10 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, a TCP connection waits in the "closed" state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 to 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      tcp {
        closed timeout {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "closed" state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout..

## system session timeout tcp closing

Sets the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "closing" state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout tcp closing *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout tcp closing

**show** system session timeout tcp closing

### Command Default

30 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, a TCP connection waits in the "closing" state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 to 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      tcp {
        closing timeout {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "closing" state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.

## system session timeout tcp established

Sets the timeout for TCP connections that are in the “established” state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout tcp established *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout tcp established

**show** system session timeout tcp established

### Command Default

86,400s

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, a TCP connection waits in the “established” state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 to 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      tcp {
        established timeout {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for TCP connections that are in the “established” state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.

## system session timeout tcp fin-received

Sets the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "fin-received" state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout tcp fin-received *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout tcp fin-received

**show** system session timeout tcp fin-received

### Command Default

240 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, a TCP connection waits in the "fin-received" state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 to 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      tcp {
        fin-received timeout {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "fin-received" state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.

## system session timeout tcp fin-sent

Sets the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "fin-sent" state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout tcp fin-sent *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout tcp fin-sent

**show** system session timeout tcp fin-sent

### Command Default

240 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, a TCP connection waits in the "fin-sent" state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 to 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      tcp {
        fin-sent timeout
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "fin-sent" state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.



## system session timeout tcp fin-wait

Sets the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "fin-wait" state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout tcp fin-wait *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout tcp fin-wait

**show** system session timeout tcp fin-wait

### Command Default

21600 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, a TCP connection waits in the "fin-wait" state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 to 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      tcp {
        fin-wait timeout
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "fin-wait" state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.

## system session timeout tcp last-ack

Sets the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "last-ack" state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout tcp last-ack *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout tcp last-ack

**show** system session timeout tcp last-ack

### Command Default

30 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, a TCP connection waits in the "last-ack" state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 to 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      tcp {
        last-ack timeout {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "last-ack" state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.

## system session timeout tcp simsyn-sent

Sets the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "simsyn-sent" state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout tcp simsyn-sent *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout tcp simsyn-sent

**show** system session timeout tcp simsyn-sent

### Command Default

30 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, a TCP connection waits in the "simsyn-sent" state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 to 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      tcp {
        simsyn-sent timeout {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "simsyn-sent" state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.

## system session timeout tcp syn-received

Sets the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "syn-received" state.

### Syntax

```
set system session timeout tcp syn-received timeout
delete system session timeout tcp syn-received
show system session timeout tcp syn-received
```

### Command Default

60 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, a TCP connection waits in the "syn-received" state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 to 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      tcp {
        syn-received timeout {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "syn-received" state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.

## system session timeout tcp syn-sent

Sets the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "syn-sent" state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout tcp syn-sent *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout tcp syn-sent

**show** system session timeout tcp syn-sent

### Command Default

30 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, a TCP connection waits in the "syn-sent" state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 to 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      tcp {
        syn-sent timeout {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "syn-sent" state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.

## system session timeout tcp time-wait

Sets the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "time-wait" state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout tcp time-wait *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout tcp time-wait

**show** system session timeout tcp time-wait

### Command Default

21600 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, a TCP connection waits in the "time-wait" state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 to 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      tcp {
        time-wait timeout {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for TCP connections that are in the "time-wait" state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.

## system session timeout udp established

Sets the timeout for UDP connections that are in the "established" state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout udp established *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout udp established

**show** system session timeout udp established

### Command Default

60 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, a UDP connection waits in the "established" state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 to 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      udp {
        established timeout {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for UDP connections that are in the "established" state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.

## system session timeout udp new

Sets the timeout for UDP connections that are in the "new" state.

### Syntax

**set** system session timeout udp new *timeout*

**delete** system session timeout udp new

**show** system session timeout udp new

### Command Default

30 seconds

### Parameters

*timeout*

The amount of time, in seconds, a UDP connection waits in the "new" state before timing out. The timeout ranges from 1 to 21474836.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  session {
    timeout {
      udp {
        new timeout {
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to set the timeout for UDP connections that are in the "new" state.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default timeout.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the current timeout.



## system static-host-mapping host-name <name>

Statically maps to a host name and an IP address and one or more aliases.

### Syntax

**set** system static-host-mapping host-name *name* [ inet *address* | alias *alias* ]

**delete** system static-host-mapping host-name *name* [ inet | alias ]

**show** system static-host-mapping host-name *name* [ inet | alias ]

### Parameters

*name*

Multi-node. A Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) name being statically mapped to an IP address; for example, router1@mydomain.com. The name can contain only letters, numbers, periods (.), and hyphens (-). You can define multiple mappings by creating multiple host-name configuration nodes.

*address*

Mandatory. The IPv4 address of the interface being statically mapped to the host name.

*alias*

Optional. Multi-node. An alias for the interface. The name can contain only letters, numbers, and hyphens (-). You can define multiple aliases for a host name by creating multiple alias configuration nodes.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  static-host-mapping {
    host-name name {
      inet address
      alias alias {
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to statically map a host name to an IP address and one or more aliases.

Use the **set** form of this command to map a host name and an IP address, assign an address, or specify an alias. Note that you cannot use **set** to change the host name. To change the host name, delete the mapping entry and create a new entry with the correct host name.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove a static mapping, an address, or an alias.

Use the **show** form of this command to view a static mapping, an address, or an alias.

## system time-zone <zone>

Sets the time zone for the local system clock.

### Syntax

**set system time-zone** *zone*

**delete system time-zone**

**show system time-zone**

### Command Default

The default time zone is Greenwich mean time (GMT).

### Parameters

*zone*

A time zone in the format of *region/location*, for example, **US/Pacific**. Note that both *region* and *location* are case sensitive. Use command completion (that is, the <Tab> key) to display available time zones.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
    time-zone zone
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to set the time zone for the local system clock. To set the time, you specify a region and location. Use command completion (that is, the <Tab> key) to display time zones that are available.

In addition to the wide range of time zones available, backward compatibility is achieved by using *Etc/<offset>* and *SystemV/<offset>* as *region/location*. Note that *Etc/<offset>* uses Posix-style offsets. These offsets use plus signs (+) to indicate west of Greenwich rather than east of Greenwich as many systems do. For example, *Etc/GMT+8* corresponds to 8 hours behind UTC (that is, west of Greenwich).

Use the **set** form of this command to set the time zone for the first time or to change the time zone setting.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove the time zone setting. This command restores the time zone to the default (GMT).

Use the **show** form of this command to view the time zone.

# Role-based Access Control

---

• Overview.....	179
• Path matching.....	179
• Default rule set.....	180
• Configuration examples.....	181

This chapter explains role-based access control (RBAC) and how to configure this feature.

## Overview

Role-based Access Control (RBAC) is a method of restricting access to part of the configuration to authorized users. RBAC allows an administrator to define the rules for a group of users that restrict which commands users of that group are allowed to run.

RBAC is performed by first creating a group assigned to the Access Control Management (ACM) rule set, adding a user to the group, creating a rule set to match the group to the paths in the system, then configuring the system to allow or deny those paths that are applied to the group.

Users are allowed to be in one of three class of users with defined privilege levels:

- *Operator*—Allowed to execute commands that are defined in the Vyatta CLI. Not allowed to into config mode.
- *Administrator*—Allowed to execute arbitrary Linux commands in addition to commands that are defined by the Vyatta CLI and to enter configuration mode.
- *Superuser*—Allowed to execute commands with root privileges through the **sudo** command in addition to having administrator class privileges.

By default, all users that are defined to be in the superuser or the administrator class belong to a common group called `vyattacfg`. This group allows a rule set to be defined that pertains to both the superuser and administrator classes without defining two group matches. The operator class users belong to the `vyattaop` group.

Brocade vRouter allows a superuser to create new groups based on the requirements. Brocade recommends creating a "security" group. A superuser can set rules so that only members of this new group are allowed to modify the ACM and login information. This prevents administrators from inadvertently compromising the system image or the ACM list.

## Path matching

System configuration is modeled after a tree structure and enables the user to filter any path of that tree. The system supports only absolute addressing that begins with `/` as the root and uses the wildcard operator (`*`) as the path language.

Operational mode paths are absolute and do not match their children if a wildcard operator (`*`) is not included at the end of the path. Therefore, not using the wildcard operator restricts the user to specific commands.

In the following example, rule 1 restricts the use of the **show** command to only **show interfaces** and rule 2 denies all other **show** commands.

```
rule 1 {
  action allow
  path "/show/interfaces"
}
rule 2 {
  action deny
  path "/show/*"
}
```

## Default rule set

The Brocade vRouter is preconfigured with a default rule set for RBAC. The following example shows the default rule set in RBAC.

```
super@vyatta# show system acm
create-default deny
delete-default deny
enable
exec-default allow
operational-ruleset {
  rule 9988 {
    action deny
    command /show/configuration
    group vyattaop
  }
  rule 9989 {
    action allow
    command "/clear/*"
    group vyattaop
  }
  rule 9990 {
    action allow
    command "/show/*"
    group vyattaop
  }
  rule 9991 {
    action allow
    command "/monitor/*"
    group vyattaop
  }
  rule 9992 {
    action allow
    command "/ping/*"
    group vyattaop
  }
  rule 9993 {
    action allow
    command "/reset/*"
    group vyattaop
  }
  rule 9994 {
    action allow
    command "/release/*"
    group vyattaop
  }
  rule 9995 {
    action allow
    command "/renew/*"
    group vyattaop
  }
  rule 9996 {
    action allow
    command "/telnet/*"
    group vyattaop
  }
  rule 9997 {
    action allow
    command "/traceroute/*"
    group vyattaop
  }
  rule 9998 {
    action allow
    command "/update/*"
    group vyatta-op
  }
  rule 9999 {
    action deny
    command "*"
    group vyattaop
  }
}
```

```

read-default allow
ruleset {
  rule 9999 {
    action allow
    group vyattacfg
    operation "*"
    path "*"
  }
}
update-default deny
}

```

## Configuration examples

As an example of RBAC configuration, this section shows how to add to the default rule set and create a new role for users who should be allowed to access information regarding only routing protocols on the system. Essentially, rules are being defined for a group of users that restrict which commands the users of that group are allowed to run.

### Example of a rule set in operational mode

Operational mode has a rule set like the configuration mode that allows administrators to specify which operation mode commands a user is allowed to run. For example, as a protocol administrator, the user needs to execute only the **show interfaces** and **show ip** families of commands and, therefore, should not be allowed to run other administrative actions.

To define the operation mode rules for the protocol administrator group (protoadmin), perform the following steps in configuration mode.

**TABLE 28** Defining the operational mode rules for the protocol administrator group

Step	Description	Command
1	Create a rule allowing all operations on /show/ip for the protoadmin group.	<pre> vyatta@R1#set system acm operational-ruleset rule 10 action 'allow' vyatta@R1#set system acm operational-ruleset rule 10 command '/show/ip/*' vyatta@R1#set system acm operational-ruleset rule 10 group 'protoadmin' </pre>
2	Create a rule allowing all operations on /show/interfaces for the protoadmin group.	<pre> vyatta@R1#set system acm operational-ruleset rule 20 action 'allow' vyatta@R1#set system acm operational-ruleset rule 20 command '/show/interfaces/*' vyatta@R1#set system acm operational-ruleset rule 20 group 'protoadmin' </pre>
3	Create a rule allowing all operations on /configure for the protoadmin group.	<pre> vyatta@R1#set system acm operational-ruleset rule 30 action 'allow' vyatta@R1#set system acm operational-ruleset rule 30 command '/configure' vyatta@R1#set system acm operational-ruleset rule 30 group 'protoadmin' </pre>

TABLE 28 Defining the operational mode rules for the protocol administrator group (continued)

Step	Description	Command
4	Deny all operations on all other paths for the protoadmin group.	<pre>vyatta@R1#set system acm operational-ruleset rule 40 action 'deny' vyatta@R1#set system acm operational-ruleset rule 40 command '*' vyatta@R1#set system acm operational-ruleset rule 40 group 'protoadmin'</pre>

The following example shows the operational mode rule set that is configured in [Table 28](#).

```
super@vyatta# show system acm operational-ruleset
rule 10 {
  action allow
  command "/show/ip/*"
  group protoadmin
}
rule 20 {
  action allow
  command "/show/interfaces/*"
  group protoadmin
}
rule 30 {
  action allow
  command /configure
  group protoadmin
}
rule 40 {
  action deny
  command "*"
  group protoadmin
}
```

The following example shows system login information regarding the protoadmin group with a user called john as a member of that group.

```
super@vyatta# show system login
group protoadmin {
}
user john {
  authentication {
    encrypted-password *****
  }
  group protoadmin
  level admin
}
super@vyatta#
```

## Rule set in operation

After logging in as a user, the configuration command options are filtered to allow only what the user can access based on the permissions for the user. Output from the **show** command for the user configuration is also filtered.

[Rule set in operation](#) displays the filtered output for a user called john in the protoadmin group. Notice that this user is restricted to the interfaces, policy, and protocols configuration commands as configured in the following example.

```
john@vyatta# set <tab>
Possible completions:
> interfaces   Network interfaces
> policy       PBR, QoS, & routing policy
> protocols    Routing protocol parameters
```

In the following example, the resources, security, service, and system branches of the tree are missing, which indicates that the configuration command options for these branches are not available to the user called john.

```
[edit]
john@vyatta# show
interfaces {
  dataplane dp0p2p1 {
    address dhcp
    description "foo bar"
    mtu 1500
  }
  dataplane dp0port2 {
    address dhcp
    mtu 1500
  }
  loopback lo {
  }
}
policy {
  route {
    route-map test {
      rule 10 {
        action permit
      }
    }
  }
}
protocols {
  static {
    route 198.18.1.2/32 {
      next-hop 198.18.2.3 {
      }
    }
  }
}
[edit]
john@vyatta#
```

## Example of a rule set in configuration mode

To manage the routing protocols on the system, the user needs access to only the interface and the routing protocol subtrees in the configuration.

To configure RBAC, you must add the protocol administrator role or group.

To add the protocol administrator group and define the rules for this group of users, perform the following steps in configuration mode.

**TABLE 29** Adding a protocol administrator group and defining the rules for the group

Step	Description	Command
1	Create a protocol administrator group.	vyatta@R1# <b>set system login group protoadmin</b>
2	Add a user to the group.	vyatta@R1# <b>set system login user johngroup protoadmin</b>
3	Create a rule that allows all operations on / protocols.	vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 10 action allow vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 10 group protoadmin vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 10 operation * vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 10 path /protocols

TABLE 29 Adding a protocol administrator group and defining the rules for the group (continued)

Step	Description	Command
4	Create a rule that allows all operations on / policy.	<pre>vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 20 action allow vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 20 group protoadmin vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 20 operation * vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 20 path /policy</pre>
5	Create a rule that allows all operations on / interfaces.	<pre>vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 30 action allow vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 30 group protoadmin vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 30 operation * vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 30 path /interfaces</pre>
6	Deny all operations on all other paths for users of the protoadmin group.	<pre>vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 40 action deny vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 40 group protoadmin vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 40 operation * vyatta@R1#set system acm ruleset rule 40 path *</pre>

The following example shows the configuration mode rule set that is configured in [Table 29](#).

```
super@vyatta# show system acm ruleset
rule 10 {
  action allow
  group protoadmin
  operation "*"
  path /protocols
}
rule 20 {
  action allow
  group protoadmin
  operation "*"
  path /policy
}
rule 30 {
  action allow
  group protoadmin
  operation "*"
  path /interfaces
}
rule 40 {
  action deny
  group protoadmin
  operation "*"
  path "*"
}
```

The following example shows system login information regarding the protoadmin group with a user called john as a member of that group.

```
super@vyatta# show system login
group protoadmin {
}
user john {
  authentication {
```



```

encrypted-password *****
}
group protoadmin
level admin
}
super@vyatta#

```

## Rule set in operation

After logging in as a user, the operational mode command options are filtered to allow only what the user can access based on the permissions for the user.

The following example displays the filtered output for a user called john in the protoadmin group. This example shows a subset of operational mode paths to which this user has been given access.

```

john@vyatta$ <tab>
Possible completions:
  configure      Enter configure mode
  show           Show system information
john@vyatta$

```

The following example shows that the user called john is limited to the specific **show** commands with access to only the **show interfaces** and **show ip** families of commands.

```

john@vyatta# run show <tab>
Possible completions:
  interfaces     Show network interface information
  ip             Show IPv4 routing informationjohn@vyatta$ show <tab>

```

## Example of a rule set to create a security group

Consider a Brocade vRouter where a superuser creates a new group called security. The superuser associates a rule set with the new group so that only members of this group can modify the ACM and login information. Additionally, a member called secadmin, who is part of the administrator group, is allowed to be a part of this new group.

To create the new group and to associate the rule set, perform the following steps in configuration mode.

Step	Command
Create a group called security. Members of the group are allowed to adjust the security policy and system logins.	vyatta@vyatta# set system login group 'security'
Promote a member called secadmin from the administrator group to the security group.	vyatta@vyatta# set system login user secadmin authentication plaintext-password #<enter>; enter password vyatta@vyatta# set system login user secadmin group 'security'
Allow the members of the security group access to all the possible vRouter operations.	vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 1 action 'allow' vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 1 group 'security' vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 1 operation '*' vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 1 path '*'
Prohibit changes to /system/acm and /system/login unless the changes are made by a member of the group called security.	vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9991 group 'vyattacfg' vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9991 operation 'delete'

Step	Command
	<pre> vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9991 path '/system/acm'  vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9992 group 'vyattacfg' vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9992 operation 'create' vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9992 path '/system/acm'  vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9993 group 'vyattacfg' vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9993 operation 'update' vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9993 path '/system/acm'  vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9994 group 'vyattacfg' vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9994 operation 'update' vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9994 path '/system/login'  vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9995 group 'vyattacfg' vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9995 operation 'delete' vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9995 path '/system/login'  vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9996 group 'vyattacfg' vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9996 operation 'create' vyatta@vyatta# set system acm ruleset rule 9996 path '/system/login' </pre>

The following rule set is displayed by entering the **show acm** command in operational mode after you perform the steps in the preceding section.

```

# show system acm
acm {
  enable
  operational-ruleset {
    rule 9977 {
      action allow
      command /show/tech-support/save
      group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9978 {
      action deny
      command "/show/tech-support/save/*"
      group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9979 {
      action allow
      command /show/tech-support/save-uncompressed
      group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9980 {
      action deny
      command "/show/tech-support/save-uncompressed/*"
      group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9981 {

```

```

        action allow
        command /show/tech-support/brief/save
        group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9982 {
        action deny
        command "/show/tech-support/brief/save/*"
        group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9983 {
        action allow
        command /show/tech-support/brief/save-uncompressed
        group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9984 {
        action deny
        command "/show/tech-support/brief/save-uncompressed/*"
        group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9985 {
        action allow
        command /show/tech-support/brief/
        group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9986 {
        action deny
        command /show/tech-support/brief
        group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9987 {
        action deny
        command /show/tech-support
        group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9988 {
        action deny
        command /show/configuration
        group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9989 {
        action allow
        command "/clear/*"
        group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9990 {
        action allow
        command "/show/*"
        group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9991 {
        action allow
        command "/monitor/*"
        group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9992 {
        action allow
        command "/ping/*"
        group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9993 {
        action allow
        command "/reset/*"
        group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9994 {
        action allow
        command "/release/*"
        group vyattaop
    }
    rule 9995 {
        action allow
        command "/renew/*"

```

```

    group vyattaop
  }
  rule 9996 {
    action allow
    command "/telnet/*"
    group vyattaop
  }
  rule 9997 {
    action allow
    command "/traceroute/*"
    group vyattaop
  }
  rule 9998 {
    action allow
    command "/update/*"
    group vyattaop
  }
  rule 9999 {
    action deny
    command "*"
    group vyattaop
  }
}
ruleset {
  rule 1 {
    action allow
    group security
    operation "*"
    path "*"
  }
  rule 9991 {
    group vyattacfg
    operation delete
    path /system/acm
  }
  rule 9992 {
    group vyattacfg
    operation create
    path /system/acm
  }
  rule 9993 {
    group vyattacfg
    operation update
    path /system/acm
  }
  rule 9994 {
    group vyattacfg
    operation update
    path /system/login
  }
  rule 9995 {
    group vyattacfg
    operation delete
    path /system/login
  }
  rule 9996 {
    group vyattacfg
    operation create
    path /system/login
  }
  rule 9999 {
    action allow
    group vyattacfg
    operation "*"
    path "*"
  }
}
}
}

```

## Rule set in operation for the security group

After the security group is created, non members of the group are unable to change the ACM or login information, even if they are members of the administrator group.

Consider two users, secadmin and cosadmin, who belong to the administrator group. Secadmin is a member of the security group. Cosadmin is not a member of the security group.

As a member of the security group, secadmin can promote himself to a superuser. The following is an example of the login of a user called secadmin who is a member of the security group:

```
secadmin@vyatta:~$ configure
secadmin@vyatta# set system login user secadmin level superuser
secadmin@vyatta# commit
```

The following is an example of the login of a user called cosadmin who is not a member of the security group.

```
cosadmin@vyatta# set system login user cosadmin level superuser
access denied
```



# Role-based Access Control Commands

---

- system acm create-default.....192
- system acm delete-default.....193
- system acm enable.....194
- system acm exec-default.....195
- system acm operational-ruleset rule <number>.....196
- system acm read-default.....197
- system acm ruleset rule <number> action.....198
- system acm ruleset rule <number> group <name>.....199
- system acm ruleset rule <number> log.....200
- system acm ruleset rule <number> operation <action>.....201
- system acm ruleset rule <number> path <path>.....203
- system acm update-default.....204

## system acm create-default

Specifies the default action for the create operation.

### Syntax

```
set system acm create-default { allow | deny }
delete system acm create-default { allow | deny }
show system acm create-default
```

### Command Default

By default, the create operation is denied.

### Parameters

**allow**  
Allows the operation.

**deny**  
Denies the operation.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
acm {
  create-default {
    allow
    deny
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

- Use the **set** form of this command to specify the default action for the create operation.
- Use the **delete** form of this command to delete the specified default action for the create operation.
- Use the **show** form of this command to display the specified default action for the create operation.



## system acm delete-default

Specifies the default action for the delete operation.

### Syntax

```
set system acm delete-default { allow | deny }  
delete system acm delete-default { allow | deny }  
show system acm delete-default
```

### Command Default

By default, the delete operation is denied.

### Parameters

**allow**  
Allows the operation.

**deny**  
Denies the operation.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {  
    delete-default {  
        allow  
        deny  
    }  
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to specify the default action for the delete operation.

Use the **delete** form of this command to delete the specified default action for the delete operation.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the specified default action for the delete operation.

## system acm enable

Enables the ACM rule sets.

### Syntax

**set system acm enable**

**delete system acm enable**

**show system acm enable**

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {  
    acm {  
        enable  
    }  
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to enable the ACM rule sets.

Use the **delete** form of this command to disable the ACM rule sets.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the ACM rule sets.

## system acm exec-default

Specifies the default action for the execute operation.

### Syntax

```
set system acm exec-default { allow | deny }
delete system acm exec-default { allow | deny }
show system acm exec-default
```

### Command Default

By default, the execute operation is allowed.

### Parameters

**allow**  
Allows the operation.

**deny**  
Denies the operation.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  acm {
    exec-default
    allow
    deny
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to specify the default action for the execute operation.

Use the **delete** form of this command remove the default action for the execute operation.

Use the **show** form of this command display default action for the execute operation.

## system acm operational-ruleset rule <number>

Enables an operational command rule set for ACM.

### Syntax

```
set system acm operational-ruleset rule [ number ]
delete system acm operational-ruleset rule [ number ]
show system acm operational-ruleset rule [ number ]
```

### Parameters

*number*

A rule number. The number ranges from 1 through 9999.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  acm {
    operational-ruleset {
      rule number
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to enable an operational rule for ACM.

Use the **delete** form of this command to disable an operational rule for ACM.

Use the **show** form of this command to display an operational rule for ACM.

## system acm read-default

Specifies the default action for the read operation.

### Syntax

```
set system acm read-default { allow | deny }
delete system acm read-default { allow | deny }
show system acm read-default
```

### Command Default

By default, the read operation is allowed.

### Parameters

**allow**  
Allows the operation.

**deny**  
Denies the operation.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
    acm {
        read-default {
            allow
            deny
        }
    }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

- Use the **set** form of this command to specify the default action for the read operation.
- Use the **delete** form of this command to disable the specified default action for the read operation.
- Use the **show** form of this command to display the specified default action for the read operation.

## system acm ruleset rule <number> action

Specifies the action to be taken for a specified ACM rule set.

### Syntax

```
set system acm ruleset rule number action { allow | deny }
delete system acm ruleset rule number action { allow | deny }
show system acm ruleset rule number action
```

### Parameters

**allow**  
Allows the operation.

**deny**  
Denies the operation.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  acm {
    ruleset {
      rule number {
        action {
          allow
          deny
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to specify the action to be taken for a specified rule set.

Use the **delete** form of this command to delete the specified action for an ACM rule set.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the actions settings for an ACM rule set.

## system acm ruleset rule <number> group <name>

Defines a group operation to match for an ACM rule.

### Syntax

**set** system acm ruleset rule *number* group *group-name*

**set** system acm ruleset rule *number* group *group-name*

**set** system acm ruleset rule *number* group *group-name*

### Parameters

*number*

A rule number. The number range from 1 through 9999.

*group-name*

A group to match.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  acm {
    rule number
    group group-name
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to define a group operation to match for a ACM rule.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove a group operation to match.

Use the **show** form of this command to display a group operation to match.

## system acm ruleset rule <number> log

Defines the log operation on a ACM rule.

### Syntax

**set system acm ruleset rule** *number* **log**

**delete system acm ruleset rule** *number* **log**

**show system acm ruleset rule** *number* **log**

### Parameters

*number*

A rule set number. The number ranges from 1 through 9999.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
ruleset {  
    rule number {  
        log  
    }  
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to define the log operation on a ACM rule.



## system acm ruleset rule <number> operation <action>

Defines a path operation to match for an ACM rule.

### Syntax

```
set system acm ruleset rule number operation { create | delete | read | update | * }
delete system acm ruleset rule number operation [ create | delete | read | update | * ]
show system acm ruleset rule number
```

### Parameters

- number*  
A rule number. The number ranges from 1 through 9999.
- create**  
Specifies a create path operation to match.
- read**  
Specifies a read path operation to match.
- update**  
Specifies an update path operation to match.
- delete**  
Specifies a delete path operation to match.
- \***  
Specifies all paths operations to match.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  acm {
    ruleset {
      rule number {
        operation create
        operation read
        operation update
        operation delete
        operation *
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

You must have the path configured for the rule to commit this configuration.

Use the **set** form of this command to define a path operation to match for an ACM rule.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove the path operation to match.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the path operation to match.

## system acm ruleset rule <number> path <path>

Defines a path to match for an ACM rule.

### Syntax

**set** system acm ruleset rule *number* path *path*

**delete** system acm ruleset rule *number* path [*path*]

**show** system acm ruleset rule *number* path

### Parameters

*number*

A rule set number. The number ranges from 1 through 9999.

*path*

A path to match; for example, /protocols.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  acm {
    ruleset {
      rule number
    }
    path path
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to define a path to match for an ACM rule.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove a path for an ACM rule.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the path for an ACM rule.

## system acm update-default

Specifies the default action for the update operation.

### Syntax

```
set system acm update-default { allow | deny }
delete system acm update-default { allow | deny }
show system acm update-default { allow | deny }
```

### Command Default

By default, the update operation is denied.

### Parameters

**allow**  
Allows the operation.

**deny**  
Denies the operation.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  acm {
    update-default allow
    update-default deny
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to specify the default action for the update operation.

Use the **delete** form of this command to delete the specified default action for the update operation.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the specified default action for the update operation.

# User Management

---

- [User management configuration](#).....205

This chapter explains how to set up user accounts and user authentication.

## User management configuration

This section presents the following topics:

- [User management overview](#) on page 205
- [Creating a login user account](#) on page 209
- [Recovering user passwords](#) on page 211
- [Configuring a system for a RADIUS authentication server](#) on page 212
- [Configuring a system for a TACACS+ authentication server](#) on page 213
- [Configuring a system for SSH access using shared public keys](#) on page 215

## User management overview

This section presents the following topics:

- [Login authentication](#) on page 205
- [RADIUS authentication](#) on page 206
- [TACACS+ authentication](#) on page 206
- [SSH access using shared public keys](#) on page 208

The Brocade vRouter supports all the following methods of authentication:

- Role-based user account management through a local user database (“login” authentication)
- Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) authentication server
- Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+) authentication server
- SSH access using a shared public key for authentication

## Login authentication

The system creates a single login user account by default: the **vyatta** user with the **vyatta password**. It is highly recommended that, for security reasons, this password be changed.

If no RADIUS or TACACS+ server has been configured, the system authenticates users with the password established by using [system login user <user> authentication](#) on page 233.

You can change user account information by using lower-level operating system commands, but changes made in this way do not persist across reboots. For persistent changes to user account information, use the Vyatta CLI.

Note that in the Brocade vRouter the Linux **passwd** command can be used only by administrative users.

The **login** configuration node is a mandatory node. It is created automatically with default information when the system is first started. If this node is subsequently deleted, the system recreates it with default information when restarted.

A login password is supplied in plain text. After configuration is committed, the system encrypts the password and stores the encrypted version internally. When you display user configuration, only the encrypted version of the password is displayed.

Note that the login authentication prompt has a total timeout interval of 60 seconds. The sum of all timeout intervals must fall within that limit; otherwise—that is, if cumulative RADIUS and TACACS+ server timeout intervals exceed 60 seconds—the login process times out and must be repeated.

## RADIUS authentication

A RADIUS server is used only to authenticate user passwords. Using RADIUS authentication does not affect the privilege level of a user. RADIUS authentication is not supported for IPv6.

To configure RADIUS, you specify the location of a RADIUS server and specify the secret to be used to authenticate the user on the RADIUS server. A RADIUS secret is specified in plain text. It is stored in plain text on the system and used as part of a cryptographic operation for transferring authentication information securely over the network. When you view a RADIUS secret, it is displayed in plain text. A RADIUS secret must not contain spaces and is case sensitive.

Where RADIUS authentication is used, some delay can be expected; the amount of delay depends on the cumulative timeout values configured for all RADIUS servers.

If you are using RADIUS authentication, a user must still be configured in the Vyatta login database; otherwise, the user is not able to access the Brocade vRouter and, therefore, is not able to query the RADIUS server.

## TACACS+ authentication

This section presents the following topics:

- [Mapping Brocade vRouter user IDs to TACACS+ usernames](#) on page 206
- [Specifying authentication level in TACACS+](#) on page 207
- [Restricting access through connection type](#) on page 207
- [Troubleshooting TACACS+ authentication issues](#) on page 208

TACACS+ is a distributed access control system for routers that provides authentication, authorization, and accounting.

To configure TACACS+, you specify the location of the TACACS+ server and specify the secret to be used to authenticate the user on the server. A TACACS+ secret is specified in plain text and stored in plain text on the system and is used as part of a cryptographic operation for transferring authentication information securely over the network. A TACACS+ secret must not contain spaces and is case sensitive.

Where TACACS+ authentication is used, some delay can be expected as the TACACS+ server is queried; the amount of delay depends on the cumulative timeout values configured for all TACACS+ servers.

Unlike RADIUS, TACACS+ authentication does not require prior authentication in the login database of the Brocade vRouter. A TACACS+ server can be used either as the only authentication server or as a supplement to the Brocade vRouter, providing password authentication.

## Mapping Brocade vRouter user IDs to TACACS+ usernames

You can map a Brocade vRouter local user ID to a different username recorded on a TACACS+ server. The mapping is specified on the TACACS+ server.

For example, to map to the **tac-user** username on the TACACS+ server to the **vyatta-user** username on the local Brocade vRouter, the (partial) configuration on the TACACS+ server looks as follows:

```
user = tac-user {
  default service = permit
  login = des "aXcnmMELgIKQQ" #vyatta
  service = vyatta-exec {
    local-user-name = "vyatta-user"
```

```
}
}
```

Logging in to the local Brocade vRouter by using the **tac-user** account ID actually logs the user in to the Brocade vRouter as **vyatta-user**.

## Order of authentication

If the system is configured for authentication chaining, the order of authentication is based on the authentication chaining. For more information about the authentication chaining method, see [system login auth-chain method](#) on page 235.

If the system is not configured using the authentication chaining method, then by default, the system looks first for configured TACACS+ servers, then for configured RADIUS servers, and finally in the local user database. If a server configuration is found, the system queries the first configured server of that type by using the configured secret. After the query is validated, the server authenticates the user from information in its database.

TACACS+ and RADIUS servers are queried in the order in which they were configured. If a query times out, the next server in the list is queried. If all queries fail, the system attempts to authenticate the user through the local Brocade vRouter authentication database. If local authentication fails, the access attempt is rejected.

### NOTE

The login process itself has a 60-second timeout. If a user cannot be authenticated in this time by a configured authentication server, then the login attempt times out.

When the system is configured for TACACS+ and a user is configured on it and on the local user database, the login attempt fails if the user fails authentication on TACACS+. The local user database is used only when the user does not exist on the TACACS+ server or that server becomes unavailable.

## Specifying authentication level in TACACS+

By default, TACACS+ authorized users on the Brocade vRouter are given operator-level access. However, you can specify the authentication level for individual TACACS+ authorized users on the local Brocade vRouter. Like the mapping of user IDs, this configuration is specified on the TACACS+ server, as shown in the following example:

```
user = administrator {
  default service = permit
  login = cleartext "vyatta"
  service = vyatta-exec {
    level = "admin"
  }
}
```

Logging in to the local Brocade vRouter as the **administrator** user in this instance provides administrative-level access. You can also configure an additional level on the TACACS+ server as **superuser** to provide superuser-level access.

## Restricting access through connection type

The Brocade vRouter sends different connection-type information through the TACACS+ protocol based on the type of connection by which the user is accessing the Brocade vRouter. This information can be used to restrict how certain types of users are allowed to access the system. For example, it is possible to restrict administrators to only login access through the physical console rather than remotely through SSH or Telnet.

**TABLE 30** Protocol values sent to TACACS+ based on connection type

Connection type	Protocol value sent to TACACS+
Console	login
SSH	sshd

TABLE 30 Protocol values sent to TACACS+ based on connection type (continued)

Connection type	Protocol value sent to TACACS+
Telnet	telnet

### Troubleshooting TACACS+ authentication issues

Because TACACS+ requires a secret, data is encrypted and, therefore, debugging authentication problems can be difficult. Tools such as **tshark** can be used, provided that the secret is known. For example, to debug a TACACS+ authentication problem by using **tshark**, given a secret of **mysecret** on the well-known TACACS+ port (**tacacs**, which is port 49), you enter either of the following commands:

```
tshark -o tacplus.key:mysecret tcp port tacacs
```

```
tshark -o tacplus.key:mysecret tcp port 49
```

### SSH access using shared public keys

Remote access to the Brocade vRouter is typically accomplished through Telnet or SSH. For either of these methods, passwords are authenticated by using the local login user database, a RADIUS server, or a TACACS+ server, as previously described. SSH is typically used when a secure session is required. One potential problem with password authentication, even by using SSH, is that password authentication is susceptible to brute-force password guessing. An alternative to password authentication, which mitigates this risk, is to authenticate SSH users by using shared public keys. With this authentication method, a private and public key pair are generated (typically by using the Linux **ssh-keygen** command) on a remote system. The public key file (typically with a extension) is loaded into the login configuration for the user who is accessing the system with it by using **loadkey** on page 218. In addition, the Brocade vRouter must be configured to disable password authentication for SSH (refer to *Brocade 5600 vRouter Services Configuration Guide*). So, SSH users can be authenticated by using passwords or shared public keys, but not both.

### Maintenance of SSH public keys of known hosts

The Brocade vRouter uses the SSH client in various subsystems to allow secure data exchange or file transfer with other trusted systems in the network. The identity of SSH servers can be verified by an SSH public-key which gets checked upon each connection attempt by the SSH client. To prevent Man-in-the-Middle attacks, when a malicious system tries to act as the designated SSH server, the SSH public-key of the server gets verified on each connection attempt by the Brocade vRouter.

#### How it works

The Brocade vRouter uses a global known hosts database to maintain the public keys of trusted and known SSH hosts. This SSH known hosts database needs to be pre-populated with the trusted SSH public keys of the systems that the Brocade vRouter is likely to interact with by means of SSH. The Brocade vRouter administrator populates the database. On a connection attempt, if the SSH server public key of a known or trusted host is a mismatch, the Brocade vRouter prevents any file or data exchange with the potentially malicious SSH server.

### SSH known-hosts configuration on Brocade vRouter subsystems

The following subsystems or functionality of the Brocade vRouter rely on non-interactive SSH authorization where the SSH known-hosts of the target system need to be known:

- "system config-management commit-archive location" if configured for a "scp://" target
- Usage of the **copy** operational command with an "scp://" target
- All calls of SSH tools by Brocade vRouter operators or administrators on the Vyatta shell



## Maintenance of SSH known hosts database

The following configuration parameters are used to populate the global SSH known hosts database:

- `security ssh-known-hosts host [ hostname ] load-from-file [ file ]`
- `security ssh-known-hosts host [ hostname ] key "[key type] [ base64 encoded key]"`
- `security ssh-known-hosts host [ hostname ] fetch-from-server`

## Configuration example: public key loaded from a local file

A public key can be loaded from a local file using:

```
security ssh-known-hosts host [ hostname ] load-from-file [ file ]
```

where the **file** is a plain-text file holding the SSH public-key as generated by the `ssh-keyscan` command. (<server address> <key type> <base64 encoded key>)

```
vyatta@vyatta# set security ssh-known-hosts host 192.168.122.1 load-from-file ~/192.168.122.1.pub
Adding key for 192.168.122.1 with fingerprint:
2048 60:9e:25:55:31:ee:c9:e9:73:a2:22:a8:18:b0:80:0e 192.168.122.1 (RSA)
```

## Public key as base64 encoded key

If the key is available as a base64 encoded string, it can be also be imported to the database with the following configuration security parameter:

```
ssh-known-hosts host [ hostname ] key [ key type] [ base64 encoded key]
```

### NOTE

The key type and the base64 encoded key need to be one quoted string.

```
vyatta@vyatta# set security ssh-known-hosts host 192.168.122.1 key "ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaCly..."
```

## Import of SSH current public key from the server

The SSH current public key can be directly imported from the server by means of the network. This method fetches the SSH public key of the server from the target server on the given network. The SSH public key fetch is only done once initially. The SSH public key then gets stored persistently in the SSH known hosts database.

### NOTE

We recommend that you use direct import only in a trusted network. This is to guarantee that on the initial fetch, no malicious system on the same network or in between performs a Man-in-the-middle attack.

```
vyatta@vyatta# set security ssh-known-hosts host 192.168.122.1 fetch-from-server
Adding key for 192.168.122.1 with fingerprint:
2048 60:9e:25:55:31:ee:c9:e9:73:a2:22:a8:18:b0:80:0e 192.168.122.1 (RSA)
```

## Creating a login user account

This section presents a sample configuration for a user account that is validated by using the local user database. [Figure 7](#) shows the sample configuration.

FIGURE 7 Login user account



Table 31 shows how to create the **John Smith** user account. John has a user ID of **john** and uses a plain text password of **mypassword**. Note that after configuration has been committed, only the encrypted version of the password is displayed when configuration is shown.

**NOTE**

User information can be changed through the UNIX shell (providing you have sufficient permission). However, any changes to Brocade vRouter user accounts or authentication through the UNIX shell are overwritten the next time you commit Brocade vRouter CLI configuration.

**CAUTION**

If your login user is not a member of the login user group "secrets" and you save a configuration either through the REST API or use the **save** command, the encrypted passwords in the configuration file are replaced with the **\*\*\*\*\*** placeholder. If you load this configuration, the replaced password fields trigger validation errors because the placeholder does not match the format for an encrypted password. Do not commit this configuration. If you ignore the error message and perform a commit with this invalid configuration, the passwords are deleted.

To create a login user account, perform the following steps in configuration mode.

TABLE 31 Creating a login user account

Step	Command
Create the user configuration node, define the user ID, and give the full name of the user.	<pre>vyatta@R1#set system login user john full-name "John Smith"</pre>
Specify the password for the user in plain text.	<pre>vyatta@R1#set system login user john authentication plaintext-password mypassword</pre>
Commit the changes. After a password has been committed, it can be displayed only in encrypted form, as the value of the <b>encrypted-password</b> attribute.	<pre>vyatta@R1# commit</pre>
Show the contents of the <b>system login</b> configuration node.	<pre>vyatta@R1# show system login  user vyatta {   authentication {     encrypted-password \$1\$     \$ZbzUPUD24iyfRwCKIT16q0   } } user john {   authentication     encrypted-password \$1\$\$Ht7gBYnxI1xCdO/     JOnodh.     plaintext-password ""   full-name "John Smith" }</pre>


## Recovering user passwords

You can use the stand-alone user-password recovery tool on a Brocade vRouter at boot time to recover system user configuration and passwords for local system users.

## Recovering system user configuration

To recover system user configuration on a Brocade vRouter, perform the following steps from a console window.

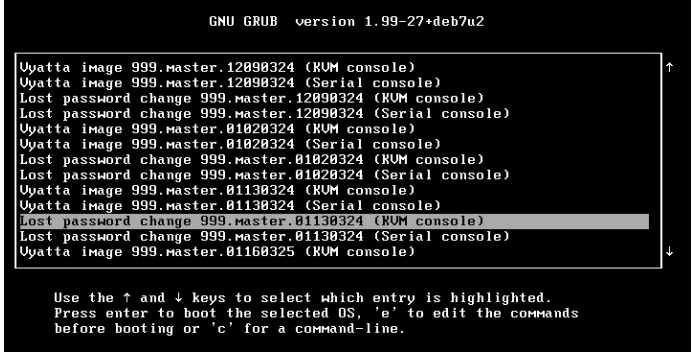
**TABLE 32** Recovering system user configuration

Step	Command
<p>Using the console, restart the Brocade vRouter. The GRUB menu appears.</p> <p>Select the relevant option from the GRUB menu and press <b>Enter</b>. The option must start with "Lost password change."</p> <p>The stand-alone user-password recovery tool starts running and prompts you to reset the local system user password.</p>	 <pre> GNU GRUB version 1.99-27+deb7u2 Vyatta image 999.master.12090324 (RUM console) Vyatta image 999.master.12090324 (Serial console) Lost password change 999.master.12090324 (RUM console) Lost password change 999.master.12090324 (Serial console) Vyatta image 999.master.01020324 (RUM console) Vyatta image 999.master.01020324 (Serial console) Lost password change 999.master.01020324 (RUM console) Lost password change 999.master.01020324 (Serial console) Vyatta image 999.master.01130324 (RUM console) Vyatta image 999.master.01130324 (Serial console) Lost password change 999.master.01130324 (RUM console) Lost password change 999.master.01130324 (Serial console) Vyatta image 999.master.01160325 (RUM console) </pre>
<p>Enter <b>y</b> and follow the instructions to re-create the username and create a new password.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b> Three user levels are supported: superuser, admin, and operator.</p> <p>After the Brocade vRouter starts, log in by using the recovered username.</p>	<pre> Standalone user password recovery tool. Do you wish to reset the local system user password? (y or n) y  Starting process to reset the password... Re-mounting root filesystem read/write... Enter the local username for password reset: vyatta  User vyatta doesn't exist on the local system Enter the user vyatta level: superuser  Setting the user (vyatta) password... Enter vyatta password: Retype vyatta password: System will reboot in 10 seconds... </pre>

## Recovering a system user password

To recover a system user password on a Brocade vRouter, perform the following steps from a console window.

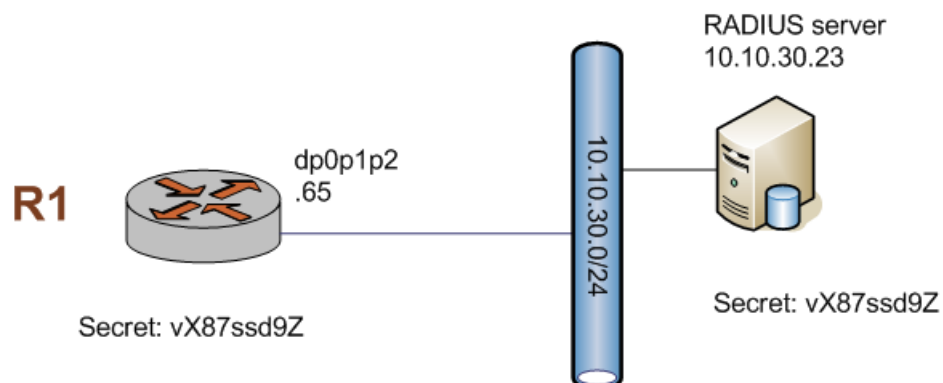
TABLE 33 Recovering a system user password

Step	Command
<p>Using the console, restart the Brocade vRouter. The GRUB menu appears.</p> <p>Select the relevant option from the GRUB menu and press <b>Enter</b>. The option must start with "Lost password change."</p> <p>The stand-alone user-password recovery tool starts running and prompts you to reset the local system user password.</p>	
<p>Enter <b>y</b> and follow the instructions to reset the password.</p> <p>After the Brocade vRouter starts, log in by using the new password.</p>	<pre> Standalone user password recovery tool. Do you wish to reset the local system user password? (y or n) y  Starting process to reset the password...  Re-mounting root filesystem read/write...  Enter the local username for password reset: vyatta  Setting the user (vyatta) password...  Enter vyatta password:  Retype vyatta password:  System will reboot in 10 seconds... </pre>

## Configuring a system for a RADIUS authentication server

This section provides a sample configuration of a Brocade vRouter for a RADIUS authentication server, as shown in the following figure.

FIGURE 8 Configuration of a RADIUS authentication server



The example shows how to define a RADIUS authentication server at the 10.10.30.23 IP address. The system is to access the RADIUS server by using a secret of **vX87ssd9Z**. Configuring the server address and the secret are the minimal configuration requirements. The port and timeout values can be changed, if required.

#### NOTE

Carefully select the shared secret because this secret (string of characters) prevents snooping attacks on passwords. This secret, or key, is used on every packet, so it is important to choose a key that makes brute-force attacks more difficult; this key should be harder to guess than any password on the system.

To define this RADIUS authentication server, perform the following steps in configuration mode.

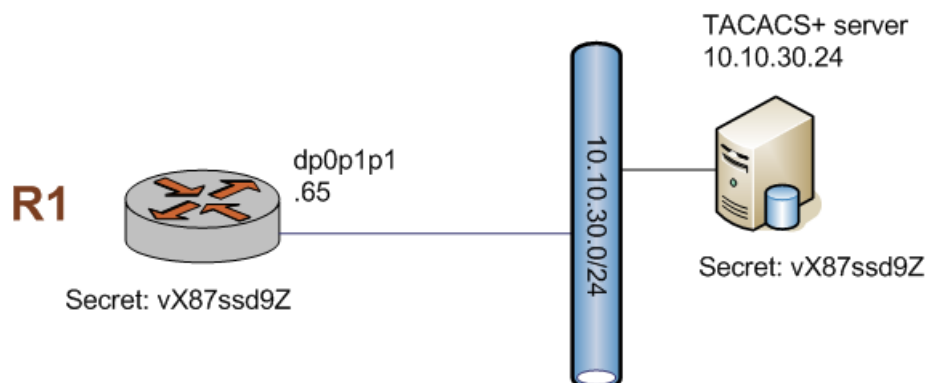
TABLE 34 Configuring a system for a RADIUS authentication server

Step	Command
Provide the location of the server and the secret to be used to access it.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system login radius-server 10.10.30.23 secret vX87ssd9Z</pre>
Commit the change.	<pre>vyatta@R1# commit</pre>
Save the configuration so that the changes persist after reboot.	<pre>vyatta@R1# save</pre> <p>Saving configuration to '/config/config.boot'... Done</p>
Show the contents of the <b>system radius-server</b> configuration node.	<pre>vyatta@R1# show system radius-server</pre> <pre>radius-server 10.10.30.23 {     secret vX87ssd9Z }</pre>

## Configuring a system for a TACACS+ authentication server

This section provides a sample configuration of a Brocade vRouter for a TACACS+ authentication server, as shown in the following figure.

FIGURE 9 Configuration of a TACACS+ authentication server



The example shows how to define a TACACS+ authentication server at the 10.10.30.24 IP address. The system is to access the TACACS+ server by using a secret of **vX87ssd9Z**. Configuring the server address and the secret are the minimal configuration requirements. The port and timeout values can be changed, if required. The default port is 49 and the default timeout is 3 seconds.

#### NOTE

Carefully select the shared secret because this secret (string of characters) prevents snooping attacks on passwords. This secret, or key, is used on every packet, so it is important to choose a key that makes brute-force attacks more difficult; this key should be harder to guess than any password on the system.

To define this TACACS+ authentication server, perform the following steps in configuration mode. Run **\$ configure** to enter the configuration mode.

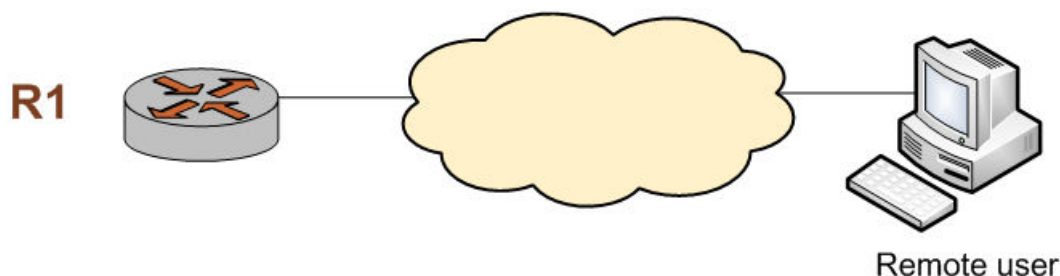
TABLE 35 Configuring a system for a TACACS+ authentication server

Step	Command
Provide the location of the server and the secret to be used to access it.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system login tacplus-server 10.10.30.24 secret vX87ssd9Z</pre>
Commit the change.	<pre>vyatta@R1# commit</pre>
Save the configuration so that the changes persist after reboot.	<pre>vyatta@R1# save  Saving configuration to '/config/config.boot'... Done</pre>
Show the contents of the <b>system tacplus-server</b> configuration node.	<pre>vyatta@R1:~\$ show system login tacplus-server  tacplus-server 10.10.30.24 {     secret "*****" }</pre>
Show the status of TACACS+.	<pre>vyatta@R1:~\$ show system tacplus status  Server address: 10.10.30.24 (active) Server port: 49 Authentication requests/replies: 1/1 Authorization requests/replies: 2/2 Accounting requests/replies: 5/5 Failed connects: 0</pre>

## Configuring a system for SSH access using shared public keys

This section provides a sample configuration of a Brocade vRouter for SSH access by using shared public keys, as shown in the following figure.

FIGURE 10 Configuration for SSH access by using shared public keys



The example shows how to configure a Brocade vRouter for SSH access that uses shared public keys for authentication and to disable password authentication (though disabling password authentication is not a prerequisite to using shared public keys for authentication). In this case, the **John Smith** user (username = **john**) already exists on the system. In addition, the public key (**xxx.pub**) was previously generated (by using the Linux **ssh-keygen** command) and is located in a directory owned by the **j2** user on **xyz.abc.com**.

To configure a system for SSH access by using shared public keys, perform the following steps in configuration mode.

TABLE 36 Configuring a system for SSH access by using shared public keys

Step	Command
Set the system to disable password authentication for SSH. Note that this step is not strictly necessary but required if users are to use only shared public key authentication.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set service ssh disable-password-authentication</pre>
Commit the change.	<pre>vyatta@R1# commit</pre>
Display the changes.	<pre>vyatta@R1# show service ssh disable-password-authentication</pre>
Load the shared public key ( <b>xxx.pub</b> ) from the system on which it is located and associate it with the user named <b>john</b> . In this case, it is located on <b>xyz.abc.com</b> in a directory owned by the <b>j2</b> user.	<pre>vyatta@R1# loadkey john scp://j2@xyz.abc.com/home/j2/.ssh/xxx.pub Enter host password for user 'j2': ##### 100.0% Done</pre>
Commit the change.	<pre>vyatta@R1# commit</pre>
Save the configuration so that the changes persist after reboot.	<pre>vyatta@R1# save Saving configuration to '/config/config.boot'... Done</pre>
Display the change.	<pre>vyatta@R1# show system login user vyatta {     authentication {</pre>

TABLE 36 Configuring a system for SSH access by using shared public keys (continued)

Step	Command
	<pre>         encrypted-password \$1\$         \$ZbzUPUD24iyfRwCKIT16q0         }     }     user john {         authentication         encrypted-password \$1\$\$Ht7gBYnxI1xCdO/         JOnodh.         plaintext-password ""         public-keys j2@xyz.abc.com {             key             AAAAB3NzaC1yc2EAAAABIwAAAIEAqaCtQr8hr6iUEvvQD3hGyry             R5k+/UjFRFrHbqHNhjdYviXveVXoZrKAKHtANRp5E             +j4WZMbSd4oYt9P9lFevyZv3xmdZE+ukuPlQBBAUnL29k1FtJ             +G7I5tXGun9VR07JzUpEb8/             KP1U4ajYC1c3HxpOLpu5AU5u7jvKu/wA0=             type ssh-rsa         }     }     full-name "John Smith" } </pre>



# User Management Commands

---

• loadkey.....	218
• show login.....	220
• show system login users.....	221
• show system tacplus status.....	222
• system login.....	223
• system login banner post-login <banner>.....	224
• system login banner pre-login <banner>.....	225
• system login group <group-name>.....	226
• system login radius-server <address>.....	227
• system login session-timeout.....	229
• system login tacplus-server <address>.....	230
• system login user <user>.....	232
• system login user <user> authentication.....	233
• system login auth-chain method.....	235
• system login user <user> authentication public-keys <key-id>.....	237
• system login user <user> full-name <name>.....	239
• system login user <user> group <group>.....	240
• system login user <user> home-directory <dir>.....	241
• system login user <user> level <level>.....	242
• system tacplus-options command-accounting.....	244

## loadkey

Loads a shared public key for a Secure Shell (SSH) user.

## Syntax

```
loadkey userfile-name
```

## Parameters

*user*

The name of a user with which to associate a public key. The user must already be defined on the Brocade vRouter.

*file-name*

The name of a shared public key file, including the full path to its location. A shared public key file is typically generated on the remote system by using the Linux **ssh-keygen** command and has a **.pub** extension. Its contents include the authentication type (for example, **ssh-rsa** or **ssh-dsa**), key, and remote system user ID (for example, **name@domain.com**).

## Modes

Configuration mode

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to load a shared public key for SSH from a file into the **public-keys** configuration for a user (refer to the [system login user <user> authentication public-keys <key-id>](#) on page 237). Loading a key from a file avoids having to manually enter the shared public key.

### NOTE

This command can be run only if there are no uncommitted changes.

The shared public key, generated on the remote system, can be loaded from a hard disk (including a Flash disk or USB device), a TFTP server, an FTP server, an SCP server, or an HTTP server.

If a public key is loaded that contains a remote system user ID that is the same as an existing **public-keys** name for a user, the existing key is overwritten.

The following table shows how to specify the syntax for files from different file locations.

**TABLE 37** Specifying locations for the shared public key file

Location	Specification
An absolute path on the local system	Use standard UNIX file specification.
FTP server	Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i> .  <i>ftp:// user:passwd@host / key-file</i>  where <i>user</i> is the username on the host, <i>passwd</i> is the password associated with the username, <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the FTP server, and <i>key-file</i> is the key file, including the path.  If you do not specify <i>user</i> and <i>passwd</i> , you are prompted for them.
SCP server	Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i> .

TABLE 37 Specifying locations for the shared public key file (continued)

Location	Specification
	<p><i>scp:// user:passwd@host / key-file</i></p> <p>where <i>user</i> is the username on the host, <i>passwd</i> is the password associated with the username, <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the SCP server, and <i>key-file</i> is the key file, including the path.</p> <p>If you do not specify <i>user</i> and <i>passwd</i>, you are prompted for them.</p>
HTTP server	<p>Use the following syntax for file-name:</p> <p><i>http:// host/ key-file</i></p> <p>where <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the HTTP server, and <i>key-file</i> is the key file, including the path.</p>
TFTP server	<p>Use the following syntax for <i>file-name</i>:</p> <p><i>tftp:// host / key-file</i></p> <p>where <i>host</i> is the host name or IP address of the TFTP server, and <i>key-file</i> is the key file, including the path relative to the TFTP root directory.</p>

## show login

Displays the login credentials of the current user.

### Syntax

```
show login [ groups | level | user ]
```

### Command Default

Displays all credentials of the current user.

### Parameters

#### groups

Displays the groups to which the user belongs.

#### level

Displays the login level of the user.

#### user

Displays the login ID of the user.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display the login credentials of the current user.

### Examples

The following example shows how to display the login credentials of the current user.

```
vyatta@R1:~$ show login
login      : vyatta   pts/0           Aug 11 17:19 (192.168.1.150)
level     : admin
user      : vyatta
groups    : users adm disk sudo dip vyattacfg
vyatta@R1:~$
```

## show system login users

Displays information about user accounts.

### Syntax

```
show system login users [ all | locked | other | vyatta ]
```

### Command Default

Displays information about Brocade vRouter accounts.

### Parameters

#### all

Displays information about all accounts.

#### locked

Displays information about locked accounts.

#### other

Displays information about non-Brocade vRouter accounts.

#### vyatta

Displays information about Brocade vRouter accounts.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display information about system accounts including information about the last time each user logged in.

### Examples

The following example shows how to display information about Brocade vRouter user accounts on R1.

```
vyatta@vyatta# show system login user
user vyatta {
  authentication {
    encrypted-password $1$4XHPj9eT$G3ww9B/pYDLSXC8YVvazP0
  }
  level admin
}
```

## show system tacplus status

Displays the status of TACACS+.

### Syntax

```
show system tacplus status
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display the status of TACACS+.

### Examples

The following example shows how to display the status of TACACS+. In this example, the (active) label, which appears next to a server address, has no bearing on the success of the attempted connection. This label identifies the last TACACS+ server to which the vRouter tried to connect.

```
vyatta@vyatta:~$ show system tacplus status
Server address: 192.168.122.7 (active)
Server port: 49
Authentication requests/replies: 1/1
Authorization requests/replies: 2/2
Accounting requests/replies: 5/5
Failed connects: 0

Server address: 192.168.122.6
Server port: 60
Authentication requests/replies: 0/0
Authorization requests/replies: 0/0
Accounting requests/replies: 0/0
Failed connects: 1
```

The following example shows the message that is displayed if TACACS+ is not configured.

```
vyatta@vyatta# run show system tacplus
status
|
Tacplus daemon is not running.
```

## system login

Creates the configuration node for user management and authentication.

### Syntax

**set system login**

**delete system login**

**show system login**

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {  
    login {  
    }  
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to create the configuration node for user management and authentication.

The **login** configuration node is a mandatory node. It is created automatically with default information when the system is first started. If this node is subsequently deleted, the system recreates it with default information.

Use the **set** form of this command to create the **login** configuration node.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore default user and authentication information.

Use the **show** form of this command to display user and authentication configuration.

## system login banner post-login <banner>

Creates the text of the post-login banner.

### Syntax

**set** system login banner post-login *banner*

**delete** system login banner post-login

**show** system login banner post-login

### Command Default

The system displays information about the operating system and copyright.

### Parameters

*banner*

The text (*banner*) to be displayed during login after a user enters a valid password. The banner must be enclosed in double quotation marks (""). Special characters such as new line (\n) and tab (\t) can also be entered.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  login {
    banner {
      post-login banner
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to create the text (*banner*) that appears when a user logs in to the system successfully.

Use the **set** form of this command to create the post-login banner.

Use the **delete** form of this command to return to the default post-login banner, which is information about the operating system and copyright.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the post-login banner.



## system login banner pre-login <banner>

Create the text of the pre-login banner.

### Syntax

**set** system login banner pre-login *banner*

**delete** system login banner pre-login

**show** system login banner pre-login

### Command Default

The system displays a welcome message.

### Parameters

*banner*

The text (*banner*) to be displayed during login after a user enters a login ID. The banner must be enclosed in double quotation marks (""). Special characters such as new line (\n) and tab (\t) can also be entered.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  login {
    banner {
      pre-login banner
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to create the text (*banner*) that appears when a user enters a login ID.

Use the **set** form of this command to create the pre-login banner.

Use the **delete** form of this command to return to the default pre-login banner which is a welcome message.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the pre-login banner.

## system login group <group-name>

Specifies the text of the group name.

### Syntax

```
set system login group group-name
```

```
delete system login group group-name
```

```
show system login group
```

### Command Default

The system displays a welcome message.

### Parameters

**group**

The group to be named.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {  
  login {  
    group group-name  
  }  
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to create the group name.

Use the **delete** form of this command to delete the group name.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the group name.

## system login radius-server <address>

Defines a Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) server for user authentication.

### Syntax

```
set system login radius-server address [ port port | secret secret | timeout timeout ]
```

```
delete system login radius-server address [ port | secret | timeout ]
```

```
show system login radius-server address [ port | secret | timeout ]
```

### Parameters

#### *address*

Multinode. The IP address of a remote authentication server running the RADIUS protocol. This server authenticates multiple users.

You can define multiple RADIUS servers by creating multiple **radius-server** configuration nodes.

#### *port*

Optional. A port to be used for RADIUS traffic. The default port is 1812.

#### *secret*

The secret (password) for the RADIUS server. This secret must be the same as that recorded on the RADIUS server. The secret consists of alphanumeric and printable special characters (for example, the space character is not permitted). The secret is case sensitive.

#### *timeout*

Optional. The time-out (interval), in seconds, after which, if the RADIUS server has not responded, the next configured RADIUS server should be queried. The time-out ranges from 1 through 30. The default time-out is 2.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  login {
    radius-server address {
      port port
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to define a RADIUS server and specify the information necessary to log in to it.

The RADIUS secret is specified and stored in plain text on the system and is used as part of a cryptographic operation for transferring authentication information securely over the network. When you view a RADIUS secret, it is displayed in plain text.

#### NOTE

RADIUS servers are currently not supported in IPv6.

Use the **set** form of this command to define a RADIUS server.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove a RADIUS server.

Use the **show** form of this command to display RADIUS server configuration.

## system login session-timeout

Defines system idle session timeout value in seconds.

### Syntax

```
set system login session-timeout { 0 | 0-4294967295 }
delete system login session-timeout [ 0 | 0-4294967295 ]
show system login session-timeout
```

### Command Default

Disabled.

### Parameters

**0**  
Disables session time out.

*0-4294967295*  
Session idle duration in seconds before timeout.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  login {
    session-timeout value
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **set** form of this command to define the system idle session timeout value in seconds.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove the system idle session timeout value and to restore the default configuration.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the system idle session timeout value.

## system login tacplus-server <address>

Defines a Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+) server for user authentication.

### Syntax

```
set system login tacplus-server address [ port port | secret secret | source-address source-address | timeout timeout ]
```

```
delete system login tacplus-server address [ port | secret | source-address | timeout ]
```

```
show system login tacplus-server address [ port | secret | source-address | timeout ]
```

### Parameters

#### *address*

Multinode. The IP address or host name of a remote authentication server running TACACS+. This server authenticates multiple users.

You can define multiple TACACS+ servers by creating multiple **tacplus-server** configuration nodes. Multiple servers are prioritized in the order in which they are configured.

#### *port*

Optional. A port to be used for TACACS+ traffic. The default port is 49.

#### *secret*

Mandatory. The secret (password) for the TACACS+ server. This secret must be the same as that recorded on the TACACS+ server.

The secret consists of alphanumeric and printable special characters (for example, the space character is not permitted). The secret is case sensitive.

#### *source-address*

Optional. An IP address to use as the source address when connecting to the TACACS+ server. This address is typically not required.

#### *timeout*

Optional. The time-out (interval), in seconds, after which, if the TACACS+ server has not responded, the next configured TACACS+ server should be queried. The time-out ranges from 1 through 30. The default time-out is 3.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  login {
    tacplus-server address {
      port port
      secret secret
      source-address source-address
      timeout timeout
    }
  }
}
```

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to define a TACACS+ server and specify the information necessary to log in to it.

The TACACS+ secret is specified in plain text and stored in plain text on the system and is used as part of a cryptographic operation for transferring authentication information securely over the network. When you view a TACACS+ secret, it is displayed in plain text.

### NOTE

TACACS+ servers are not supported for IPv6.

Users doing packet capture need to see the encrypted TACACS+ traffic.

Use the **set** form of this command to define a TACACS+ server.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove a TACACS+ server.

Use the **show** form of this command to display TACACS+ server configuration.

## system login user <user>

Creates a user account.

### Syntax

**set system login user** *user*

**delete system login user** *user*

**show system login user** *user*

### Parameters

*user*

Multinode. A unique user ID of up to 32 characters, including alphanumeric characters or hyphens (-). You can define multiple user accounts by creating multiple **user** configuration nodes.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  login {
    user user
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to define a user that is authenticated by using the internal mechanism of the system: "login" authentication.

Note that, although user account and authentication information can be changed by using the operating system shell, the system overwrites these changes the next time you commit configuration in the Vyatta shell. For persistent changes to user or authentication information, use Vyatta CLI commands.

In addition, a user cannot be added to the local authentication database if the same username already exists in an accessible remote authentication database (for example, TACACS+).

Use the **set** form of this command to create a **user** configuration node.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove a **user** configuration node. Note that you cannot delete the account you are currently using.

Use the **show** form of this command to display **user** configuration.



## system login user <user> authentication

Sets an authentication password for a user.

### Syntax

```
set system login user user authentication { encrypted-password epwd | plaintext-password ppwd }
```

```
delete system login user user authentication [ encrypted-password | plaintext-password ]
```

```
show system login user user authentication [ encrypted-password | plaintext-password ]
```

### Parameters

*user*

A user ID.

*epwd*

The encrypted password. This password consists of the encrypted characters of the actual password. You can obtain the encrypted characters of the actual password by using the **mkpasswd** command on the VM.

*ppwd*

The password for the user, specified in plain text. Most special characters can be used with the exception of single quotation marks ('), double quotation marks ("), and backslashes (\).

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  login {
    user user {
      authentication {
        encrypted-password epwd
        plaintext-password ppwd
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to set a password to authenticate a user. When the encrypted password is displayed, the encrypted value is shown. The plain text password appears as double quotation marks in the configuration.



#### CAUTION

If your login user is not a member of the login user group "secrets" and you save a configuration either through the REST API or use the save command, the encrypted passwords in the configuration file are replaced with the "\*\*\*\*\*" placeholder. If you load this configuration, the replaced password fields trigger validation errors because the placeholder does not match the format for an encrypted password. Do not commit this configuration. If you ignore the error message and perform a commit with this invalid configuration, the passwords are deleted.

To disable a user account without deleting it, you can simply set the value of the **encrypted-password** option to an asterisk (\*).

Use the **set** form of this command to set the password for a user.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove the password for a user.

Use the **show** form of this command to display user password configuration.

## system login auth-chain method

Sets the order of the authentication.

### Syntax

```
set system login auth-chain [ method tacplus | method local ]
delete system login auth-chain [ method tacplus | method local ]
show system login
```

### Command Default

The default order for the authentication method is TACAS+ server followed by local system-user login.

```
auth-chain { method tacplus; method login}
```

### Parameters

#### method tacplus

Specifies the authentication method as TACACS+ server.

#### method local

Specifies the authentication method as local system-user login.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  login {
    auth-chain {
      method tacplus
      method local
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to set the order of authentication by using the authentication chaining method. The system performs authentication in the order of the authentication chain. The scenarios for authentication chaining follow.

- If you specify the authentication method as local, the system uses the local system-user login to authenticate.
- If you specify the authentication method as TACACS +, the system uses the TACACS + authentication. The authentication chain does not proceed to use the local authentication unless the TACAS+ authentication is configured but not working.
- If you use both the TACACS + and local authentication methods, the system attempts the first method. If the first method is successful, the chain does not proceed. If the first method fails, the authentication chain proceeds and the system attempts the next method.

Use the **set** form of this command to set the order of the authentication chain.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove the order of the authentication chain.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the order of the authentication chain.

## system login user <user> authentication public-keys <key-id>

Specifies parameters for a Secure Shell (SSH) shared public key user authentication.

### Syntax

**set** system login user *user* authentication public-keys *key-id* [ **key** *key-value* | **options** *key-options* | **type** *key-type* ]

**delete** system login user *user* authentication public-keys *key-id* [ **key** | **options** | **type** ]

**show** system login user *user* authentication public-keys *key-id* [ **key** | **options** | **type** ]

### Parameters

*user*

A user ID.

*key-id*

A key identifier. This identifier is typically in the form *user@host* and is generated by the **ssh-keygen** command when used to create the private and public key pair.

*key-value*

The shared public key.

*key-options*

Additional options separated by commas. See the "AUTHORIZED\_KEYS FILE FORMAT" section of the **sshd** manual page ( **man sshd** ) for a detailed description of the available options.

*key-type*

The key (authentication) type to be used, which must be specified. The key is either of the following:

**ssh-dsa**—Specifies DSA authentication.

**ssh-rsa**—Specifies RSA authentication.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```

system {
  login {
    user user {
      authentication {
        public-keys key-id {
          key key-value
          options key-
          type key-
        }
      }
    }
  }
}

```

## Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify the parameters to be used for shared public key authentication for logins by using SSH. During commit, these values are placed in the `/home/<user>/ssh/authorized_keys` file. Changes to this file can be made only by using this command. All direct user changes to this file are lost.

Rather than specifying these parameters directly by using the **set** form of this command, the recommended method is to use the [loadkey](#) on page 218. It populates the *key-id*, *key-value*, *key-options*, and *key-type* arguments for a specified user given a shared public key file generated by the Linux **ssh-keygen** command on the remote system.

Shared public key authentication for SSH can be available in addition to password authentication for SSH or it can be used exclusively. If both methods are made available at the same time, then a login prompt appears if a shared public key is not provided at the start of the SSH session. To use only shared public keys for SSH authentication, password authentication for SSH must first be disabled. For information on disabling password authentication for SSH, refer to *Brocade 5600 vRouter Services Configuration Guide*.

Use the **set** form of this command to set the public key parameters.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove the public key parameters.

Use the **show** form of this command to display public key parameters.

## system login user <user> full-name <name>

Records the full name of a user.

### Syntax

**set** system login user *user* full-name *name*

**delete** system login user *user* full-name

**show** system login user *user* full-name

### Parameters

*user*

A user ID.

*name*

A character string that represents the name of the user, including alphanumeric characters, space, and hyphens (-). A character string that includes spaces must be enclosed in double quotation marks (").

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  login {
    user user {
      full-name name
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to record the full name of a user.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify the name of a user.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove the name of a user.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the name of a user.

## system login user <user> group <group>

Assigns a user to a group.

### Syntax

**set** system login user *user* group *group*

**delete** system login user *user* group

**show** system login user *user* group

### Parameters

*user*

A user ID.

*group*

A character string that represents the group to which the user is to be assigned. Groups are defined in the **/etc/group** directory.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  login {
    user user {
      group group
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to assign a user to a group. A user can be a member of multiple groups by running this command once for each group to which the user is to be assigned.

Use the **set** form of this command to make a user a member of a group.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove a user from a group.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the groups to which a user is assigned.



## system login user <user> home-directory <dir>

Specifies the home directory of a user.

### Syntax

**set** system login user *user* home-directory *dir*

**delete** system login user *user* home-directory

**show** system login user *user* home-directory

### Command Default

The home directory is **/home/user**.

### Parameters

*user*

A user ID.

*dir*

A character string that represents the home directory of the user. The following is an example: **/home/vyatta**

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  login {
    user user {
      home-directory dir
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify the home directory of a user.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify the home directory of a user.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default home directory of a user, which is **/home/user**.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the home directory of a user.

## system login user <user> level <level>

Specifies the privilege level and system access of a user.

### Syntax

**set system login user** *user level level*

**delete system login user** *user level*

**show system login**

### Command Default

A user is assigned administrative privileges.

### Parameters

*user*

A user ID.

*level*

The privilege level of the user. The level is either of the following:

**admin**—Assigns administrative privilege to the user. The user can run any command in the Vyatta CLI or the underlying operating system.

**operator**—Assigns restricted privilege to the user. The user can run operational commands in the Vyatta CLI plus restricted forms of the **ping** and **traceroute** commands. The user cannot enter configuration mode or run configuration commands.

**superuser**—A superuser has the privilege of an **admin** user. In addition to that, a superuser has access to install or update additional packages, and access or modify internal system files and so on.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  login {
    user user {
      level level
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to assign role-based system access to a user.

The system supports two system roles:

- Administrator (admin): A user that is assigned a role of admin has full access to all Vyatta-specific commands plus all operating system shell commands. Access to operating system shell commands is direct: the user does not need exit

to another shell mode before running these commands. Although admin users can run any command implemented in the system, command completion and CLI help show only Brocade vRouter commands.

- Operator: A user that is assigned a role of operator has access to the Brocade vRouter operational command set but no access to configuration commands. An operator also has limited access to operating system commands. At this time, command completion and CLI help show all Brocade vRouter commands for a user with the operator role.

Use the **set** form of this command to assign the privilege level to a user.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the privilege level of a user to the default level, which is administrative level.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the privilege level of a user.

## system tacplus-options command-accounting

Enables logging of accounting records for interactive shell (vbash ) commands.

### Syntax

```
set system tacplus-options command-accounting
delete system tacplus-options command-accounting
show system tacplus-options
```

### Command Default

Accounting records are not logged.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
    tacplus-options {
        command-accounting
    }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to enable logging of accounting records for interactive shell commands.

Connections to the system for which commands are logged include SSH, Telnet, console, and serial. Command logging is not limited to TACACS+ authenticated users and accounts for interactive shell commands. Accounting records are logged to the TACACS+ server.

Use the **set** form of this command to enable logging of accounting records for interactive shell commands.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default behavior for command accounting, that is, accounting records are not logged.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the configuration of command accounting.

# Service-user Management

---

- [Overview.....](#) 245

This chapter describes service-user management on the Brocade vRouter.

## Overview

Service-user management handles authentication for services and is not intended to be used to access the Brocade vRouter for administrative purposes. The administration of service-user management is done at the system-login configuration level.

This chapter describes service-user management, which is controlled at the **resources service-users** configuration level. Configuration is set in a central location within the **resources service-users** configuration section.

Other services that require service-user authentication, such as OpenVPN, refer to authentication profiles, or group of users, in the **resource service-users** section.

The Brocade vRouter allows you to connect to existing Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) services in your organization for authentication purposes and maintain a local user database that does not require any pre-existing identity service in your environment.

All changes for service users do not require any service interruption or service restart.

### NOTE

Service-user management includes revoking access or deleting user accounts, which does not terminate an existing service-user session of services.

All service users are granted access to the Service-User Web Portal, which is available at the following address:

URL: `https://<IP address of Brocade vRouter>/service`

To enable this portal, use the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set service https service-users
```

## Local service user

This section covers how to grant and allow access to services to a local service user.

A local service user is maintained at the local service-user configuration level under **resources service-users**.

Authentication for a local service user is gained by using a username and password. The password in the CLI is provided as a plain-text password or as an encrypted SHA-512 hash. A plain-text password is stored as an SHA-512 hash after the configuration is committed.

## Setting a username and password

You must set a username and an authentication password to create the minimum configuration that is required of a local service user.

To create the alice user with the password of secretpw, use the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users local user alice auth plaintext-password secretpw
```

## Granting service access to a user

Setting a username and password does not grant the alice user access to service. Users are not granted access to any service by default.

To grant access to OpenVPN for alice, you must give alice access to the vtun0 tunnel interface by entering the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set openvpn vtun0 auth local user alice
```

The alice user is now granted access to vtun0 and authenticated by the specified username and password.

#### NOTE

For OpenVPN, additional settings are required to allow authentication by the username and password. For details, see the “SSL-VPN Client Bundler” section in *Brocade 5600 vRouter OpenVPN Configuration Guide*.

In general, granting or revoking access to any service does not require a restart of the service—that is, a service interruption.

## Revoking service access for a user

To revoke access to vtun0 for the alice user, use the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# delete openvpn vtun0 auth local user alice
```

#### NOTE

By revoking access to vtun0, the existing service session (for example, an OpenVPN tunnel connection) is not interrupted or terminated—termination must be done manually.

## Locking services from a user

Alternatively, a local service user can be temporarily locked from all services on the Brocade vRouter by locking the user.

To lock a user, use the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users local user alice lock
```

#### NOTE

Revoking access to individual services does not interrupt or terminate an existing service session.

## Unlocking services from a user

To remove the service-user lock, use the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# delete resources service-users local user alice lock
```

## Granting access service to a group

To maintain a larger set of local users, you must group the users and reference the service configuration to which the group of users should be granted access.

To grant access to an OpenVPN endpoint that is dedicated for use by the sales department to the alice and bob local service users, both of whom work in the sales department, use the following commands:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users local group sales-dep
vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users local user alice group sales-dep
vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users local user bob group sales-dep
```

To grant the sales-dep group access to the OpenVPN vtun1 interface, use the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set interfaces openvpn vtun1 auth local group sales-dep
```

## Service-user authentication through LDAP

To create an LDAP profile to allow authentication against an existing LDAP service in your network, the following are required:

- Existing network connection or a route to the LDAP server
- LDAP server that is configured for Transport Layer Security (TLS) with StartTLS or LDAP over Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) (ldaps://)

### NOTE

Encryption is required for the exchange of the authentication token.

## Creating an LDAP authentication profile

To create an LDAP authentication profile, configured with minimum settings, the following are required:

- Authentication that is granted against the Example corporate LDAP server, which can be reached through the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of ldap.example.com
- Authentication that is configured with TLS and supports StartTLS

To configure the LDAP server URL with StartTLS `ldap://` (for LDAP+SSL: `ldaps:`), use the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users ldap example.com url ldap://ldap.example.com
```

If a custom port is required, the port can be specified in the URL by appending the port number to the FQDN; for example: `ldap://ldap.example.com:1234`.

The default FQDN ports, according to a generally accepted standard, are as follows if not otherwise specified.

**TABLE 38** Default ports for FQDN

FQDN	Port Number
ldap://	389
ldaps://	636

## Setting the base distinguished name

To set the Base Distinguished Name (Base DN) of an LDAP v3 server for an organization that is used for authorization, use the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users ldap example.com base-dn ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
```

## Applying the LDAP search filter to an LDAP entry

To apply the LDAP search filter to each LDAP entry that matches the username and LDAP member attribute, use the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users ldap example.com search-filter (objectClass=posixAccount)
```

The LDAP search filter also supports more-complex search filters, as described in RFC2254.

The following are the minimum required attributes that must be set for the LDAP authentication of service users.

- URL
- Base-dn
- Search-filter

## Configuring the bind user and bind password

If the LDAP server does not allow anonymous binding, an LDAP bind user and bind password must be configured by using the following commands:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users ldap example.com bind-dn
bind-username

vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users ldap example.com password
bindpw
```

## Specifying a trusted CA certificate

If the TLS or SSL certificate that is issued by a corporate certificate authority (CA) is not trusted or known to the Brocade vRouter, the required certificate must be explicitly specified.

To specify this certificate, use the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users ldap example.com tls cacert /config/auth/ldap-ca.pem
```

Alternatively, to reduce the number of checks on the TLS or SSL LDAP server certificate, use the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users ldap example.com tls reqcert {never | allow | try | demand}
```

If no option is explicitly specified, the **demand** option is set by default.

TABLE 39 Variable definitions

Option	Description
<b>never</b>	Performs no request and no checks on the server certificate.
<b>allow</b>	Requests and checks the certificate, if available. Tolerates bad server certificates.
<b>try</b>	Requests and checks the certificate, if available. Bad server certificates get rejected.
<b>demand</b>	Requests a valid server certificate (default).

## Performing group-based LDAP authorization

If the LDAP search filter is configured to perform a group-based LDAP authorization, you might need to restrict (that is, adapt) the search base to search for groups.

To adjust the search base for groups, use the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users ldap example.com group base-dn ou=Groups,dc=example,dc=com
```

Depending on the defined LDAP schema (RFC2307 or RFC2307bis), the member attribute is either **memberuid** or **member** for the group-based authentication.

If the LDAP schema used by the server requires a third variant that is not covered by either schema standard, use the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users ldap example.com group member-attribute
memberAttr
```



## Gaining authentication from multiple LDAP servers

To gain authentication for a service from multiple different LDAP servers and LDAP trees, you must create two different LDAP authentication profiles by using the following commands:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set resources auth ldap example.com url ldap://ldap.example.com
vyatta@vyatta# set resources auth ldap example.com ...
vyatta@vyatta# set resources auth ldap emea.example.com url ldap://ldap.emea.example.com
vyatta@vyatta# set resources auth ldap emea.example.com ...
```

To specify both LDAP profiles in the configuration of a service authentication, use the following commands:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set interfaces openvpn vtunX auth ldap example.com
vyatta@vyatta# set interfaces openvpn vtunX auth ldap emea.example.com
```

When a service user tries to authenticate the OpenVPN vtunX interface, the provided credentials are authenticated against all the provided LDAP profiles.

A single access-granting LDAP profile is sufficient for the service user to successfully establish the OpenVPN connection. Access is not required to be granted by all the configured LDAP profiles.

### NOTE

The OpenVPN service authentication could be mixed with LDAP authentication profiles, local service users, or groups of local-service users.

To allow SSL-VPN clients to connect without a TLS client certificate that is specific to an end user, you must set the **client-cert-not-required** option. Even if client certificates were created, they are not included in any SSL-VPN client bundles.

```
# set interfaces openvpn vtunX client-cert-not-required
```

## Setting advanced LDAP options

LDAP referrals are not used by the LDAP server by default.

To configure the server to follow LDAP referrals, use the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users ldap example.com follow-referrals
```

LDAP service-user management supports two LDAP schema standards: RFC2307 and RFC2307bis. The main difference between the two standards is how the member attribute of groups is stored.

According to RFC2307, the members of a group are stored in the LDAP attribute **memberuid**. According to RFC2307bis, the members of a group are stored in **member**. These settings depend on the LDAP schema that is used on the LDAP server.

To set the RFC2307bis schema standard as the default, use the following command:

```
vyatta@vyatta# set resources service-users ldap example.com schema rfc2307bis
```



# IPv6

---

- IPv6 overview.....251
- IPv6 configuration.....251

This chapter describes commands for enabling IPv6 functionality on the system.

## IPv6 overview

The Brocade vRouter includes extensive support of IPv6. An overview of that support is available in *Brocade 5600 vRouter IPv6 Support Configuration Guide*.

## IPv6 configuration

Examples of configuring basic IPv6 functionality are located in *Brocade 5600 vRouter IPv6 Support Configuration Guide*.



# IPv6 System Commands

---

- reset ipv6 neighbors address <ipv6>.....254
- reset ipv6 neighbors interface <interface\_name>.....255
- show ipv6 neighbors.....256
- system ipv6 disable.....257
- system ipv6 disable-forwarding.....258
- system ipv6 strict-dad.....259

## reset ipv6 neighbors address <ipv6>

Removes an IPv6 address from the IPv6 Neighbor Discovery (ND) cache.

### Syntax

```
reset ipv6 neighbors address ipv6
```

### Parameters

*ipv6*

An IPv6 address.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to remove an IPv6 address from the ND cache.

## reset ipv6 neighbors interface <interface\_name>

Removes an interface from the IPv6 Neighbor Discovery (ND) cache.

### Syntax

```
reset ipv6 neighbors interface interface_name
```

### Parameters

*interface\_name*

The identifier of an interface. Supported interface types are:

- Data plane
- Loopback

For more information about these interface types, refer to [Loopback and Data Plane Interfaces](#) on page 295.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to remove an Ethernet interface from the IPv6 ND cache.

## show ipv6 neighbors

Displays the IPv6 Neighbor Discovery (ND) cache.

### Syntax

```
show ipv6 neighbors
```

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display the IPv6 ND cache.

Table 40 shows possible ND states.

**TABLE 40** ND states

State	Description
incomplete	Address resolution is currently being performed on this neighbor entry. A neighbor solicitation message has been sent, but a reply has not yet been received.
reachable	Address resolution has determined that the neighbor is reachable. Positive confirmation has been received, and the path to this neighbor is operationable.
stale	More than the configured elapsed time has passed since reachability confirmation was received from this neighbor.
delay	More than the configured elapsed time has passed since reachability confirmation was received from this neighbor. This state allows TCP to confirm the neighbor. If not, a probe should be sent after the next delay time has elapsed.
probe	A solicitation has been sent, and the router is waiting for a response from this neighbor.
failed	Neighbor reachability state detection failed.
noarp	The neighbor entry is valid. There are no attempts to validate it, but the neighbor can be removed from the cache when its lifetime expires.
permanent	The neighbor entry is valid indefinitely and should not be cleared from the cache.
none	No state is defined.



## system ipv6 disable

Disables the assignment of IPv6 addresses on all interfaces.

### Syntax

**set system ipv6 disable**

**delete system ipv6 disable**

**show system ipv6 disable**

### Command Default

IPv6 addresses are assigned on all interfaces.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {  
    ipv6 {  
        disable  
    }  
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to disable the assignment of IPv6 addresses on all interfaces.

Use the **set** form of this command to disable IPv6 address assignment on all interfaces.

Use the **delete** form of this command to enable IPv6 address assignment on all interfaces.

Use the **show** form of this command to display IPv6 disabling configuration.

## system ipv6 disable-forwarding

Disables IPv6 forwarding on all interfaces.

### Syntax

**set system ipv6 disable-forwarding**

**delete system ipv6 disable-forwarding**

**show system ipv6 disable-forwarding**

### Command Default

IPv6 packets are forwarded.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {  
    ipv6 {  
        disable-forwarding  
    }  
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to disable IPv6 forwarding on all interfaces. IPv6 forwarding can also be disabled for each interface by using the **ipv6 disable-forwarding** command associated with the interface (for example, **interfaces dataplane dpOp1p1 ipv6 disable-forwarding**). These commands are documented in the guides that describe the individual interfaces. For example, Ethernet interface commands are described in *Brocade 5600 vRouter LAN Interfaces Configuration Guide*.

Use the **set** form of this command to disable IPv6 packet forwarding on all interfaces.

Use the **delete** form of this command to enable IPv6 packet forwarding on all interfaces.

Use the **show** form of this command to display IPv6 packet forwarding configuration.

## system ipv6 strict-dad

Disables IPv6 operation on an interface when Duplicate Address Detection (DAD) fails for a link-local address.

### Syntax

**set system ipv6 strict-dad**

**delete system ipv6 strict-dad**

**show system ipv6 strict-dad**

### Command Default

IPv6 operation is not disabled on an interface when DAD fails for a link-local address.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  ipv6 {
    strict-dad
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to disable IPv6 operation on an interface when DAD fails for a link-local address.

Link-local addresses are formed from an interface identifier that is partly derived from the hardware address of a device, which is assumed to be uniquely assigned.

By default, the duplicate address is not assigned to the interface, but IPv6 continues to operate. This command disables IPv6 on the interface when a duplicate of the link-local address is detected.

Use the **set** form of this command to disable IPv6 operation on an interface when DAD fails for a link-local address.

Use the **delete** form of this command to leave IPv6 operational on an interface when DAD fails for a link-local address.

Use the **show** form of this command to display DAD failure configuration.



# Hot-plugging Interfaces

- [Overview.....](#) 261
- [Hot-plugging Interfaces on the VMware ESX Platform.....](#) 263
- [Hot-plugging interfaces on the KVM platform.....](#) 263

## Overview

A Brocade vRouter supports *hot-plugging*, which allows a running Brocade vRouter to automatically discover a PCI network interface that is virtually plugged into the Brocade vRouter, that is, a guest virtual machine (VM), without having to restart the router. After the interface is discovered, you can configure it as a data plane interface as described in *LAN Interfaces Reference Guide*.

Brocade vRouter hot-plugging is supported on the VMware ESX and Linux Kernel-based Virtual Machine (KVM) virtualization platforms.

### NOTE

Ubuntu 14.04 comes with Linux kernel version 3.13.0, which does not support hot-plugging. To get hot-plugging to work on Ubuntu 14.04, you must upgrade your Ubuntu software to use Linux kernel version 3.13.1.

## How hot-plugging works on the VMware ESX platform

Hot-plugging an interface into a Brocade vRouter that runs in a VMware ESX host VM is automatic.

When you add a network interface to a running Brocade vRouter by using VMware vSphere Client, the router automatically detects the interface and registers it with the kernel. Similarly, when you delete an interface from a running Brocade vRouter, it unregisters the interface with the kernel.

### NOTE

On a VMware ESX platform, as many as 10 interfaces can be hot-plugged into a Brocade vRouter. The following table lists the names that are assigned to hot-plugged interfaces.

**TABLE 41** Interface names

Slot	Interface Name
1	dp0p160p1
2	dp0p192p1
3	dp0p224p1
4	dp0p256p1
5	dp0p161p1
6	dp0p193p1
7	dp0p225p1
8	dp0p257p1
9	dp0p162p1
10	dp0p194p1

## PCI slot assignment

When you hot-plug a network interface into a Brocade vRouter, the router assigns the first virtualized PCI slot that is available to the interface. For example, if the first, second, and third PCI slots are in use, the new interface is hot-plugged into the fourth slot. In this case,

the name of the new interface is dpOp256p1. However, if the interface that is associated with the second slot is deleted later, when you hot-plug a new interface, the new interface is plugged into the second slot (dpOp192p1).

## Persistence

On the VMware ESX virtualization platform, by default, hot-plugged network interfaces persist through Brocade vRouter restarts.

## How hot-plugging works on the Linux KVM platform

On the KVM platform, to create and hot-plug an interface into a Brocade vRouter, you can use the following command on the host KVM system.

```
virsh attach-device <vm-name> [ --persistent ] <xml-filename>
```

To detach interfaces from a running Brocade vRouter, you can use the following command.

```
virsh detach-device <vm-name> [ --persistent ] <xml-filename>
```

### NOTE

On a Linux KVM platform, as many as 32 interfaces can be hot-plugged into a Brocade vRouter.

### NOTE

The virsh tool is available through the libvirt toolkit.

## PCI slot assignment

On the KVM platform, when hot-plugging a network interface into a Brocade vRouter, unless you explicitly specify the PCI slot address, the router plugs the interface into the next available PCI slot with the higher slot number.

## Example

If the first and third slots are in use, and a new interface is introduced, the new interface will take the next available PCI slot with the higher slot number. In this case, it will take PCI slot-4 and not PCI slot-2. The reason is that slot-2 is unavailable because it was previously used after the system was booted.

## Persistence

On the Linux KVM virtualization platform, by default, hot-plugged network interfaces do not persist through Brocade vRouter restarts. To ensure persistence, you can run the following command on the host KVM system:

```
virsh attach-device <vm-name> --persistent <xml-filename>
```

## Naming of interfaces

During the boot sequence of a Brocade vRouter, the VM assigns PCI slots in the order that interfaces are discovered.

To avoid the renaming of interfaces, either ensure that no temporary hot-plugged interfaces exist before the persistent interfaces or use the `<address . . . />` clause in the XML file that is associated with the interface to specify the PCI slot into which to plug the interface.

## Persistence of interface configurations

You can detach a network interface from a Brocade vRouter by using the `virsh detach-device <vm-name> [ --persistent ] <xml-filename>` command. However, because the router configuration is independent of hot-plugging, when detaching an interface, the configuration that is associated with this interface remains in the `config/config.boot` file on the router.

If you attach an interface into the PCI slot that corresponds to the name of an existing interface in the config/config.boot file, then the router reuses the existing configuration by interface name.

#### NOTE

When you detach an interface, the router resets all MIB counters.

## Hot-plugging Interfaces on the VMware ESX Platform

On the VMware ESX platform, perform the following steps to hot-plug a network interface into a Brocade vRouter:

1. Log in to vSphere Client.
2. Add an Ethernet network adapter to your router and set the adapter type to **VMXNET 3**.

#### NOTE

VMXNET 3 is the only supported network adapter type for hot-plugging on the VMware ESX platform.

The router hot-plugs the new interface.

## Hot-plugging interfaces on the KVM platform

On the KVM virtualization platform, perform the following steps to hot-plug a network interface into a Brocade vRouter:

1. Add an Ethernet network interface.
2. On the host KVM system, create an XML file that specifies the following information:
  - Interface type.
  - MAC address of the interface. You must ensure that this address is unique.
  - Label or name of the network device to which your router is connected.
  - (Optional) Virtualized PCI slot to which the interface is plugged.
  - Model type.

For more information about the contents of the XML file, refer to [XML file contents](#) on page 263.

3. Use the **virsh attach-device <vm-name> [--persistent] <xml-filename>** command to hot-plug the interface into the router.

#### NOTE

The **virsh attach-device** command does not check whether a MAC address is already assigned to another network interface. As a result, if you assign the same MAC address to multiple network interfaces and try to configure them, a Brocade vRouter might display error messages. To avoid these error messages, ensure that the MAC addresses you assign to hot-plugged interfaces are unique.

## Creating XML files for hot-plugging interfaces

On the KVM platform, before hot-plugging an interface into a Brocade vRouter, you must create an XML file on the host VM. This XML file describes the parameter of the network interface.

### XML file contents

The following table describes the elements that the XML file for a hot-plugged interface can contain.

TABLE 42 XML file contents

Element	Description
interface type	Interface type. The following values are supported: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>network:</b> Specifies a network interface.</li> <li><b>bridge:</b> Specifies a bridge interface. Use this value when hot-plugging an interface that is connected to a Spirent port.</li> <li><b>direct:</b> Specifies a management interface.</li> </ul>
mac address	MAC address of the interface. You must ensure that this address is unique.
source network	(Applies to network interfaces only) Label or name of the network to which the interface connects.
source bridge	(Applies to bridge interfaces only) Label or name of the bridge device to which the interface connects.
model type	Type of the network virtualization model. Currently, the only supported model on the KVM platform is <b>virtio</b> .
address type	(Optional) The virtualized PCI slot into which the interface is plugged. You must use the hexadecimal notation to specify the slot number.

## XML file examples

The following table lists a few Brocade vRouter hot-plugging scenarios. For each scenario, this table shows the contents of the corresponding sample XML file.

TABLE 43 Sample hot-plugging XML files

Hot-plugging Scenario	Description
XML file for hot-plugging a network interface and connecting it to the net300 network. A PCI slot is not specified.  <b>NOTE</b> The net300 network is created using virt-manager.	<pre>&lt;interface type='network'&gt;   &lt;mac address='52:54:00:ff:ff:ff' /&gt;   &lt;source network='net300' /&gt;   &lt;model type='virtio' /&gt; &lt;/interface&gt;</pre>
XML file for hot-plugging a network interface into the tenth PCI slot.	<pre>&lt;interface type='network'&gt;   &lt;mac address='52:54:00:ff:ff:ff' /&gt;   &lt;address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x0a' /&gt;   &lt;source network='net300' /&gt;   &lt;model type='virtio' /&gt; &lt;/interface&gt;</pre>
XML file for hot-plugging a network interface and connecting it to a Spirent interface. A PCI slot is not specified.	<pre>&lt;interface type='bridge'&gt;   &lt;mac address='52:54:00:15:d6:bd' /&gt;   &lt;source bridge='br2' /&gt;   &lt;model type='virtio' /&gt; &lt;/interface&gt;</pre>
XML file for hot-plugging a management interface. A PCI slot is not specified.	<pre>&lt;interface type='direct'&gt;   &lt;mac address='52:54:00:d2:87:1d' /&gt;   &lt;source dev='em1' mode='bridge' /&gt;   &lt;model type='virtio' /&gt; &lt;/interface&gt;</pre>
XML file for hot-plugging a management interface. The interface is to be hot-plugged into the third PCI slot.	<pre>&lt;interface type='direct'&gt;   &lt;mac address='52:54:00:d2:87:1d' /&gt;   &lt;source dev='em1' mode='bridge' /&gt;   &lt;model type='virtio' /&gt;</pre>



**TABLE 43** Sample hot-plugging XML files (continued)

Hot-plugging Scenario	Description
	<pre>&lt;address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x03' function='0x0' /&gt; &lt;/interface&gt;</pre>

## Naming sequence

The following table describes how a Brocade vRouter assigns names to interfaces and whether they persist.

**TABLE 44** Brocade vRouter interface naming on the KVM platform

Hot-plugging sequence example	Naming Sequence	Naming sequence after restarting the router	Naming sequence after shutting down the router and starting it
A nonpersistent interface is hot-plugged.	The interface is hot-plugged into the next available PCI slot with the higher slot number. For example, dpOs3.	dpOs3	The dpOs3 interface no longer exists.
A persistent interface is hot-plugged.	The interface is hot-plugged into the next available PCI slot with the higher slot number. For example, dpOs3.	dpOs3	The dpOs3 interface persists.
A nonpersistent interface is hot-plugged followed by another nonpersistent interface.	The interfaces are hot-plugged into the next available and consecutive PCI slots with the higher numbers. For example, dpOs3 followed by dpOs4.	dpOs3 dpOs4	The dpOs3 and dpOs4 interfaces no longer exist.
A nonpersistent interface is hot-plugged followed by a persistent interface.	The interfaces are hot-plugged into the next available and consecutive PCI slots with the higher numbers. For example, dpOs3 followed by dpOs4.	dpOs3 dpOs4	The dpOs3 interface is detached and the dpOs4 interface persists, but it is plugged into PCI slot 3 (dpOs3).
A persistent interface is hot-plugged followed by a nonpersistent interface.	The interfaces are hot-plugged into the next available and consecutive PCI slots with the higher numbers. For example, dpOs3 followed by dpOs4.	dpOs3 dpOs4	The dpOs3 interface persists, but the dpOs4 interface is detached and no longer exists.
A persistent interface is hot-plugged into PCI slot 10.	The interface is hot-plugged into PCI slot 10.	dpOs10	The dpOs10 interface persists.
A nonpersistent interface is hot-plugged into PCI slot 10.	The interface is hot-plugged into PCI slot 10.	dpOs10	The dpOs10 interface is detached and no longer exists.
A nonpersistent interface is hot-plugged followed by a persistent interface that is hot-plugged into PCI slot 10.	The nonpersistent interface is plugged into the next available slot with the higher number (for example, dpOs3).  The persistent interface takes slot 10.	dpOs3 dpOs10	The dpOs10 interface persists.  The dpOs3 interface is detached and no longer exists.
A persistent interface is hot-plugged followed by a nonpersistent interface that is hot-plugged into PCI slot 10.	The persistent interface takes the next available higher slot.  The nonpersistent interface takes slot 10.	dpOs3 dpOs10	The dpOs3 interface persists.  The dpOs10 interface is detached and no longer exists.
A persistent interface is hot-plugged followed by a persistent interface that is hot-plugged into PCI slot 10.	The first persistent interface takes the next available higher slot.  The second persistent interface takes slot 10.	dpOs3 dpOs10	The dpOs3 interface persists.  The dpOs10 interface persists.

**TABLE 44** Brocade vRouter interface naming on the KVM platform (continued)

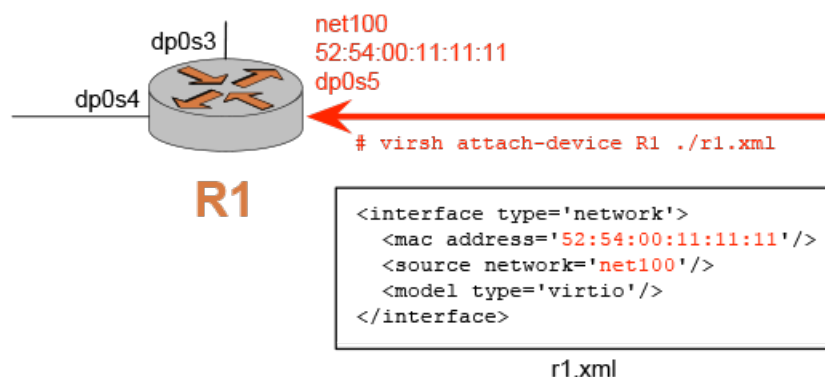
Hot-plugging sequence example	Naming Sequence	Naming sequence after restarting the router	Naming sequence after shutting down the router and starting it
A nonpersistent interface is hot-plugged followed by a nonpersistent interface that is hot-plugged into PCI slot 10.	The first nonpersistent takes the next available higher slot. The second nonpersistent interface takes slot 10.	dp0s3 dp0s10	The dp0s3 interface is detached and no longer exists. The dp0s10 interface is detached and no longer exists.
A persistent interface is hot-plugged followed by a persistent interface (dp0s4) and then the former interface is detached.	The second interface persists.	dp0s4	The dp0s4 interface persists.

## Interface hot-plugging examples (KVM)

This section provides examples of how to hot-plug network interfaces into Brocade vRouters that are running in a host KVM system.

### Hot-plugging a nonpersistent network interface

The following figure shows how to hot-plug a nonpersistent network interface into a Brocade vRouter and connect the interface to the net100 network.

**FIGURE 11** Hot-plugging a nonpersistent interface

To configure hot-plugging for the scenario that is shown in this figure, perform the following steps on the host VM:

1. Log in to the host VM.
2. Change the directory to `/home/vyatta/`.
3. Create the `r1.xml` file and set its contents to the following:

```
<interface type='network'>
  <mac address='52:54:00:11:11:11' />
  <source network='net100' />
  <model type='virtio' />
</interface>
```

4. Save the `r1.xml` file in the `/home/vyatta/` directory.

- Hot-plug the interface into the R1 router by entering the following command:

```
# virsh attach-device R1 ./r1.xml
```

The router hot-plugs the interface into the next available PCI slot with the higher number.

#### NOTE

In this instance, which is the default case, the interface is nonpersistent. This means that the interface is automatically detached during the shutdown sequence of the guest VM.

To detach this interface, enter the following command:

```
# virsh detach-device R1 ./r1.xml
```

### Hot-plugging a persistent network interface

To hot-plug the interface that is specified by the r1.xml file (shown in the figure in [Hot-plugging a nonpersistent network interface](#) on page 266) in a persistent manner, enter the following command:

```
# virsh attach-device R1 --persistent ./r1.xml
```

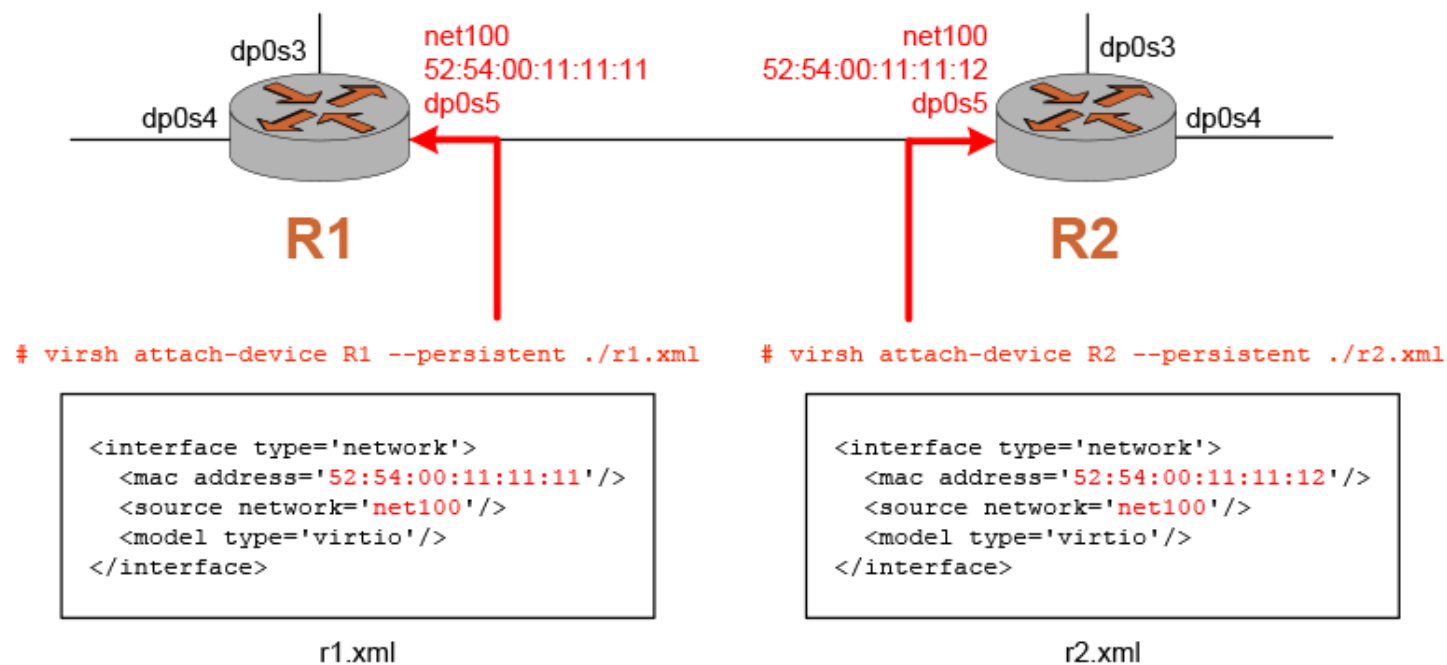
For a persistent interface, to detach the interface in a persistent manner, enter the following command on your VM guest:

```
# virsh detach-device R1 --persistent ./r1.xml
```

### Hot-plugging two persistent network interfaces to connect two routers

The following figure shows how to hot-plug two persistent network interfaces on two routers so that the two routers are connected to the same network.

FIGURE 12 Connecting two routers with hot-plugged interfaces



To configure hot-plugging for the scenario that is shown in this figure, perform the following steps on the host VM:

1. Log in to the VM guest.
2. Change the directory to `/home/vyatta/`.
3. Create the `r1.xml` file and set its contents to the following:

```
<interface type='network'>
  <mac address='52:54:00:11:11:11' />
  <source network='net100' />
  <model type='virtio' />
</interface>
```

4. Save the `r1.xml` file in the `/home/vyatta/` directory.
5. Create the `r2.xml` file and set its contents to the following:

```
<interface type='network'>
  <mac address='52:54:00:11:11:12' />
  <source network='net100' />
  <model type='virtio' />
</interface>
```

The only difference between `r1.xml` and `r2.xml` is the MAC address. Because these two interfaces are on the same network, the MAC addresses must be unique.

6. Save the `r2.xml` file in the `/home/vyatta/` directory.
7. Hot-plug an interface into the R1 router by entering the following command:

```
# virsh attach-device R1 --persistent ./r1.xml
```

8. Hot-plug an interface into the R2 router by entering the following command:

```
# virsh attach-device R2 --persistent ./r2.xml
```

## Commands for attaching and detaching interfaces on the KVM platform

You can use the following KVM commands to attach and detach network interfaces from a Brocade vRouter. These commands are available through the libvirt library on the KVM platform.

- `virsh attach-device <vm-name> [--persistent] <xml-filename>` on page 270
- `virsh detach-device <vm-name> [--persistent] <xml-filename>` on page 271

```
virsh attach-device <vm-name> [--persistent] <xml-filename>
```

Attaches a network interface to a Brocade vRouter.

### Syntax

```
virsh attach-device vm-name [--persistent] xml-filename
```

### Command Default

Nonpersistent. The interface is detached during the router shutdown sequence.

### Parameters

*vm-name*

The name of the guest VM (the Brocade vRouter).

**persistent**

Causes the interface to remain attached to the device after the router is powered on after being shut down.

*xml-filename*

The name of the XML file that specifies the interface parameters.

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to attach a network interface to a Brocade vRouter. If you do not use the **persistent** keyword, the interface is detached during the router shutdown sequence. To ensure that the interface remains attached, use the **persistent** keyword.

## virsh detach-device <vm-name> [--persistent] <xml-filename>

Detaches a network interface from a Brocade vRouter.

### Syntax

```
virsh detach-device vm-name [--persistent] xml-filename
```

### Command Default

Nonpersistent. The interface is reattached after VM restarts or is powered on.

### Parameters

*vm-name*

The name of the guest VM (the Brocade vRouter).

**persistent**

Causes the interface to remain detached from the device after the router is powered on after being shut down.

*xml-filename*

The name of the XML file that specifies the interface parameters.

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to detach a network interface from a Brocade vRouter. If you do not use the **persistent** keyword, the interface remains attached, even after the router is restarted or powered on after being shut down. To ensure that the interface remains detached, use the **persistent** keyword.

If you hot-plug two interfaces and give them the same MAC address by mistake, use this command to detach one of these interfaces. In the XML file, specify the PCI slot to which the interface is plugged, as shown in the following example:

```
<interface type='network'>
<mac address='52:54:00:dd:dd:dd' /><address type='pci' domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x08'
function='0x0' />
<source network='net200' />
<model type='virtio' />
</interface>
```





# Logging

- [Logging configuration.....273](#)

This chapter describes the Brocade vRouter logging mechanism.

## Logging configuration

### Logging overview

Significant system events are captured in log messages (also called syslog messages), which you can view on the console, save to a file, forward to an external server such as a syslog server, or direct to the terminal session of one or more specific users.

Depending on the level of message severity you choose to log, system log messages include notices of ordinary and routine operations as well as warnings, failure, and error messages.

The logging function of the Brocade vRouter uses the UNIX **syslogd** process. Logging configuration performed within the system CLI is stored in the **/etc/syslogd.conf** file.

By default, local logging is enabled and sends messages to the **/var/log/messages** file.

### Logging facilities

The Brocade vRouter supports the following standard syslog facilities.

**TABLE 45** Syslog facilities

Facility	Description
auth	Authentication and authorization
authpriv	Nonsystem authorization
cron	Cron daemon
daemon	System daemons
kern	Kernel
lpr	Line printer spooler
mail	Mail subsystem
mark	Time stamp
news	USENET subsystem
security	Security subsystem
syslog	System logging
user	Application processes
uucp	UUCP subsystem
local0	Local facility 0
local1	Local facility 1
local2	Local facility 2
local3	Local facility 3
local4	Local facility 4
local5	Local facility 5

TABLE 45 Syslog facilities (continued)

Facility	Description
local6	Local facility 6
local7	Local facility 7
all	All facilities excluding "mark"

In addition, logging can be selectively enabled for some specific routing components. For more information, refer to [Enabling and disabling logging for specific features](#) on page 275.

## Log destinations

When logging is enabled, system log messages are always written to the **messages** file in the **/var/log** directory of the local file system. In addition, system logs can be sent to the console, a named file in the local file system, a server running the **syslogd** utility (that is, a syslog server), or the terminal session of one or more specific users.

- To direct syslog messages to the console, use the **system syslog console** command.
- To direct syslog messages to a named file in the local file system, use the **system syslog file** command.
- To direct syslog messages to a remote machine running the **syslogd** utility, use the **system syslog host** command.
- To direct syslog messages to the terminal of a specific user, multiple users, or all users logged in to the routing platform, use the **system syslog user** command.

## Log file locations and archiving

Messages are written either to the main log file (the default) or a file that you specify. User-defined log files are written to the **/var/log/user** directory under the user-specified file name.

The system uses standard UNIX log rotation to prevent the file system from filling with log files. When log messages are written to a file, the system writes up to 250 KB of log messages into the *logfile* file, where *logfile* is either the main log file or a name you have assigned to a user-defined file. When the log file reaches its maximum size, the system closes it and compresses it into an archive file. The archive file is named *logfile.1.gz*.

At this point, the logging utility opens a new log file and begins to write system messages to it. When the new log file is full, the first archive file is renamed *logfile.2.gz* and the new archive file is named *logfile.1.gz*.

The system archives log files in this way until a maximum number of log files exist. By default, the maximum number of archive files is five (that is, up to *logfile.5.gz*), where *logfile.1.gz* always represents the most recent file. After the fifth file, the oldest archive log file is deleted as it is overwritten by the next oldest file.

To change the properties of log file archiving, configure the **system syslog archive** node with the following parameters.

- Use the **size** parameter to specify the maximum size of each archive log file.
- Use the **files** parameter to specify the maximum number of archive files to be maintained.

## Log severities

Log messages generated by the Brocade vRouter are associated with one of the following levels of severity.

TABLE 46 Syslog message severities

Severity	Meaning
emerg	Emergency. A general system failure or other serious failure has occurred, such that the system is unusable.

TABLE 46 Syslog message severities (continued)

Severity	Meaning
alert	Alert. Immediate action is required to prevent the system from becoming unusable; for example, because a network link has failed or the database has become compromised.
crit	Critical. A critical condition exists, such as resource exhaustion—for example, the system is out of memory, CPU processing thresholds are being exceeded, or a hardware failure has occurred.
err	Error. An error condition has occurred, such as a failed system call. However, the system is still functioning.
warning	Warning. An event has occurred that has the potential to cause an error, such as invalid parameters being passed to a function. This situation should be monitored.
notice	Notice. A normal but significant event has occurred, such as an unexpected event. It is not an error, but could potentially require attention.
info	Informational. Normal events of interest are being reported as they occur.
debug	Debugging level. Trace-level information is being provided.

**CAUTION**

Risk of service degradation. Debugging severity is resource intensive. Setting logging levels to Debug can affect performance.

## Logging configuration example

Table 47 shows how to create a log file that captures kernel-related alerts of critical and higher severity.

To create a log file to capture kernel-related critical alerts, perform the following steps in configuration mode.

TABLE 47 Creating a log file to capture kernel-related alerts of critical and higher severity

Step	Command
Create a log file called <b>kernel-log</b> and log kernel-related messages of critical and higher severity.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system syslog file kernel-log facility kern level crit</pre>
Commit the configuration.	<pre>vyatta@R1# commit  Restarting system log daemon.... vyatta@R1#</pre>
Verify the configuration.	<pre>vyatta@R1# show system syslog file kernel-log  facility kern {     level crit }</pre>

The **show log file *kernel-log*** command can then be used in operational mode to display the contents of the *kernel-log* log file.

## Enabling and disabling logging for specific features

Some features of the Brocade vRouter—for example, BGP, OSPF, and IPsec VPN—produce feature-specific log messages that can be enabled and disabled within the configuration node for that feature. When you enable logging for a system feature, the log messages are sent to whatever destinations are configured for syslog.

By default, log messages are sent to the main log file. You can configure syslog to send log messages to a file you specify in the `/var/log/user` directory.

## Overriding the host syslog logging facility for log entries

The system syslog configuration on a Brocade vRouter provides the capability to send log entries to a host system. You can designate which log entries are sent by specifying the facility and log level by using the `system syslog global facility <facility> level <level>` on page 290 command. You can use this command multiple times to specify different facility values for the log entries sent to the specified host.

You can also configure a facility override value that replaces the facility fields in all log entries sent to a specified host. For example, you can specify multiple facility values for a set of log entries sent by the Brocade vRouter to a log host. Before sending the entries to the host, the facility values are replaced with the override value. When the host receives these log entries, their facility field value is designated by the facility override value.

### NOTE

A facility override only affects log entries sent to a host and does not affect entries set to a user, console, or file.

A facility override is specific to a host. Different hosts can have different override values.

The following example provides a configuration of multiple host syslog logging facilities with a facility override.

Step	Command
Specify the facilities messages that are sent to a host.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system syslog host 10.10.10.10 facility auth level crit vyatta@R1# set system syslog host 10.10.10.10 facility user level err</pre>
Specify the facility override value that replaces the facility values of the log entries sent to the host.	<pre>vyatta@R1# set system syslog host 10.10.10.10 facility-override local7</pre>
Commit the configuration.	<pre>vyatta@R1# commit</pre>
Verify the configuration.	<pre>vyatta@R1#show system syslog syslog {   host 10.10.10.10 {     facility auth {       level crit     }     facility user {       level err     }     facility-override local7   } }</pre>

# Logging Commands

---

• delete log file.....	278
• show log.....	279
• show log image <image-name>.....	281
• system syslog.....	282
• system syslog console facility <facility> level <level>.....	285
• system syslog file <filename> archive.....	286
• system syslog file <filename> facility <facility> level <level>.....	287
• system syslog global archive.....	289
• system syslog global facility <facility> level <level>.....	290
• system syslog host <hostname> facility <facility> level <level>.....	291
• system syslog host <hostname> facility-override <facility>.....	293
• system syslog user <userid> facility <facility> level <level>.....	294

## delete log file

Deletes a user-defined log file, including all its archive files.

### Syntax

```
delete log file file-name
```

### Parameters

*file-name*

A user-defined log file in the **/var/log/user** directory.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to delete a user-defined log file.

User-defined log files are created in the **/var/log/user** directory. When you enter this command, the specified file and all associated archive files are deleted from this directory.

Note that deleting the user-defined log file does not stop the system from logging events. If you use this command while the system is logging events, old log events are deleted, but events after the delete operation are recorded in the new file. To delete the file altogether, first disable logging to the file by using the [system syslog](#) on page 282, and then delete it.

## show log

Displays the contents of a log file or files.

### Syntax

```
show log [ all | authorization | directory | file file-name | tail [ lines ] | component ]
```

### Parameters

#### all

Displays the contents of all master log files.

#### authorization

Displays all authorization attempts.

#### directory

Displays a listing of all user-defined log files.

#### file *file-name*

Displays the contents of the specified user-defined log file.

#### tail

Displays the last 10 lines of the system log.

#### *lines*

The number of lines that **tail** displays at the end of the system log.

#### *component*

A specific system component. The component is any of the following:

- **dhcp**—Displays the log for **dhcp**
- **dns**—Displays the log for **dns**
- **firewall**—Displays the log for **firewall**
- **https**—Displays the log for **https**
- **image**—Displays the log from an image
- **nat**—Displays the log for **nat**
- **openvpn**—Displays the log for **openvpn**
- **snmp**—Displays the log for **snmp**
- **vpn**—Displays the log for **vpn**
- **vrrp**—Displays the log for **vrrp**

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display the contents of a log file or files.

When used with no option, this command displays the contents of the main system log, which is the default log to which the system writes syslog messages.

When used with the **authorization** option, this command displays all authorization attempts.

When used with the **directory** option, this command displays a list of all user-defined log files. Syslog messages can be written to these or the main system log file. User-specified log files are defined by using the `system syslog file <filename> facility <facility> level <level>` on page 287.

When **file** *file-name* is specified, this command displays the contents of the specified user-defined log file.

When used with the **tail** option, this command displays the last 10 lines of the system log file and continues to display log messages as they are added to the log file. This command can be interrupted by using <Ctrl+C>.

When *lines* is specified, the last *lines* lines of the system log are to be displayed.

When *component* is specified, log messages that relate to that component are displayed.



## show log image <image-name>

Displays the contents of a log file or files on an image other than the currently active image.

### Syntax

```
show log image image-name [ all | authorization | directory | file file-name | tail [ lines ] ]
```

### Command Default

When used with no option, this command displays the contents of the main system log. The system writes syslog messages to this default log.

### Parameters

**all**

Displays the contents of all master log files for the specified image.

**authorization**

Displays all authorization attempts for the specified image.

**directory**

Displays a listing of all user-defined log files for the specified image.

**file** *file-name*

Displays the contents of the specified user-defined log file for the specified image.

**tail**

Displays the last 10 lines of the system log for the specified image.

*lines*

The number of lines to be displayed. If not specified, 10 lines are displayed.

### Modes

Operational mode

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to display the contents of a log file or files on an image other than the currently active image.

## system syslog

Configures the syslog utility of the system.

### Syntax

```
set system syslog
delete system syslog
show system syslog
```

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  syslog {
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to configure the syslog utility of the system.

Using this command, you can set the destinations for log messages from different routing components (facilities) and specify what severity level of message should be reported for each facility.

Log messages generated by the Brocade vRouter are associated with one of the following levels of severity.

**TABLE 48** Syslog message severities

Severity	Meaning
emerg	Emergency. A general system failure or other serious failure has occurred, such that the system is unusable.
alert	Alert. Immediate action is required to prevent the system from becoming unusable; for example, because a network link has failed or the database has become compromised.
crit	Critical. A critical condition exists, such as resource exhaustion—for example, the system is out of memory, CPU processing thresholds are being exceeded, or a hardware failure has occurred.
err	Error. An error condition has occurred, such as a failed system call. However, the system is still functioning.
warning	Warning. An event has occurred that has the potential to cause an error, such as invalid parameters being passed to a function. This situation should be monitored.
notice	Notice. A normal but significant event has occurred, such as an unexpected event. It is not an error, but could potentially require attention.
info	Informational. Normal events of interest are being reported as they occur.
debug	Debugging level. Trace-level information is being provided.

The Brocade vRouter supports the following standard syslog facilities.

**TABLE 49** Syslog facilities

Facility	Description
auth	Authentication and authorization
authpriv	Nonsystem authorization
cron	Cron daemon
daemon	System daemons
kern	Kernel
lpr	Line printer spooler
mail	Mail subsystem
mark	Time stamp
news	USENET subsystem
security	Security subsystem
syslog	System logging
user	Application processes
uucp	UUCP subsystem
local0	Local facility 0
local1	Local facility 1
local2	Local facility 2
local3	Local facility 3
local4	Local facility 4
local5	Local facility 5
local6	Local facility 6
local7	Local facility 7
all	All facilities excluding "mark"

Messages are written either to the main log file (the default) or a file that you specify. User-defined log files are written to the `/var/log/user` directory under the user-specified file name.

The system uses standard UNIX log rotation to prevent the file system from filling with log files. When log messages are written to a file, the system writes up to 250 KB of log messages into the *logfile* file, where *logfile* is either the main log file or a name you have assigned to a user-defined file. When the log file reaches its maximum size, the system closes it and compresses it into an archive file. The archive file is named *logfile.1.gz*.

At this point, the logging utility opens a new log file and begins to write system messages to it. When the new log file is full, the first archive file is renamed *logfile.2.gz* and the new archive file is named *logfile.1.gz*.

The system archives log files in this way until a maximum number of log files exist. By default, the maximum number of archive files is 5 (that is, up to *logfile.5.gz*), where *logfile.1.gz* always represents the most recent file. After the fifth file, the oldest archive log file is deleted as it is overwritten by the next oldest file.

To change the properties of log file archiving, configure the **system syslog archive** node with the following parameters.

- Use the **size** parameter to specify the maximum size of each archive log file.
- Use the **files** parameter to specify the maximum number of archive files to be maintained.

Use the **set** form of this command to create the syslog configuration.

Use the **delete** form of this command to remove the syslog configuration.

Use the **show** form of this command to view the syslog configuration.

## system syslog console facility <facility> level <level>

Specifies which messages are sent to the console.

### Syntax

**set** system syslog console facility *facility* level *level*

**delete** system syslog console facility [ *facility*

[ **level** ]]

**show** system syslog console facility [ *facility* [ **level** ]]

### Parameters

*facility*

Multi-node. The kinds of messages that are sent to the console. Refer to "Usage Guidelines" for the system syslog command for supported facilities.

You can send the log messages of multiple facilities to the console by creating multiple **facility** configuration nodes within the **console** node.

*level*

The minimum severity level of log message that are reported to the console. The level is any of **emerg**, **alert**, **crit**, **err**, **warning**, **notice**, **info**, or **debug**. Refer to "Usage Guidelines" for the system syslog command for the meanings of these levels.

By default, messages of **err** severity are logged to the console.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  syslog {
    console {
      facility facility {
        level level
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify which messages are sent to the console.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify which messages are sent to the console.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default console message configuration.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the configuration of console messages.

## system syslog file <filename> archive

Specifies the settings for log file archiving of a user-defined log file.

### Syntax

```
set system syslog file filename archive { files files | size size }
```

```
delete system syslog file filename archive { files | size }
```

```
show system syslog file filename archive { files | size }
```

### Parameters

*filename*

Multi-node. A file to which the specified log messages are written. A file name can include numbers, letters, and hyphens (-). Full path specifications are not accepted.

You can send log messages to multiple files by creating multiple **file** configuration nodes.

*files*

The maximum number of archive files that are maintained for this log file. After the maximum number has been reached, logs are rotated with the oldest file being overwritten. The default maximum number is 10.

*size*

The maximum size in bytes of archive files for this log file. After the maximum has been reached, the file is closed and archived in compressed format. The default maximum size is 1 MB.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  syslog {
    file filename{
      archive {
        files files
        size size
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify settings for log file archiving of a user-defined log file.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify settings for log file archiving of a user-defined log file.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default archiving configuration for a user-defined log file.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the configuration of the user-defined log file archiving.

## system syslog file <filename> facility <facility> level <level>

Specifies which messages are sent to a user-defined log file.

### Syntax

**set system syslog file** *filename* **facility** *facility* **level** *level*

**delete system syslog file** *filename* **facility** [ *facility* [ **level** ] ]

**show system syslog file** *filename* **facility** [ *facility* [ **level** ] ]

### Parameters

#### *filename*

Multi-node. A file to which the specified log messages are written. A file name can include numbers, letters, and hyphens (-). Full path specifications are not accepted.

You can send log messages to multiple files by creating multiple **file** configuration nodes.

#### *facility*

Multi-node. The kinds of messages that are sent to the user-defined log file. Please see the Usage Guidelines in system syslog command for supported logging facilities.

You can send the log messages of multiple facilities to this log file by creating multiple **facility** configuration nodes within the **file** configuration node.

#### *level*

The minimum severity level of log message that are reported. The level is any of **emerg**, **alert**, **crit**, **err**, **warning**, **notice**, **info**, or **debug**. Refer to "Usage Guidelines" for the system syslog command for the meanings of these levels.

By default, messages of **warning** severity are logged to the file.

The Brocade vRouter supports the sending of log messages to the main system log file, the console, a remote host, a user-specified file, or a user account.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  syslog {
    file filename {
      facility facility {
        level level
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify which messages are sent to a user-defined log file.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify which messages are sent to a user-defined log file.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default message configuration for a user-defined log file.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the configuration for user-defined log file messages.



## system syslog global archive

Specifies the settings for log file archiving of the main system log file.

### Syntax

```
set system syslog global archive { files files | size size }
```

```
delete system syslog global archive { files | size }
```

```
show system syslog global archive { files | size }
```

### Parameters

*files*

The maximum number of archive files that are maintained for the main system log file. After the maximum has been reached, logs are rotated with the oldest file being overwritten. The default maximum number is 10.

*size*

The maximum size in bytes of archive files for the main system log file. After the maximum has been reached, the file is closed and archived in compressed format. The default maximum size is 1 MB.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  syslog {
    global {
      archive {
        files files
        size size
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify the settings for log file archiving of the main system log file.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify the settings for log file archiving of the main system log file.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default configuration for log file archiving.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the configuration for log file archiving.

## system syslog global facility <facility> level <level>

Specifies which messages are sent to the main system log file.

### Syntax

**set** system syslog global facility *facility* level *level*

**delete** system syslog global facility [ *facility* [ *level* ] ]

**show** system syslog global facility [ *facility* [ *level* ] ]

### Parameters

*facility*

Multi-node. The kinds of messages that are sent to the main system log file. Refer to “Usage Guidelines” for the system syslog command for supported facilities.

You can send the log messages of multiple facilities to the main system log file by creating multiple **facility** configuration nodes within the **global** node.

*level*

The minimum severity level of log message that are reported. The level is any of **emerg**, **alert**, **crit**, **err**, **warning**, **notice**, **info**, or **debug**. Refer to “Usage Guidelines” for the system syslog command for the meanings of these levels.

By default, messages of **warning** severity are logged to the main system log file.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  syslog {
    global {
      facility facility {
        level level
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify which messages are sent to the main system log file.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify which messages are sent to the main system log file.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default configuration for the main system log file.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the configuration for the main system log file.

## system syslog host <hostname> facility <facility> level <level>

Specifies which messages are sent to the remote syslog server.

### Syntax

**set** system syslog host *hostname* facility *facility* level *level*

**delete** system syslog host *hostname* facility [ *facility* [ *level* ] ]

**show** system syslog host *hostname* facility [ *facility* [ *level* ] ]

### Parameters

#### *hostname*

Leaf-list. An IP address or a host name. The host must be running the syslog protocol. A host name can include numbers, letters, hyphens (-), and such other commonly used characters. The IP address must follow one of the addressing standards: *X.X.X.X* or [*x.x.x.x.x.x.x*]. All host formats may have a :port suffix. The IPv6 address must be enclosed in square brackets ([ ]) to delimit the address and port.

You can send log messages to multiple hosts by creating multiple **host** configuration nodes.

#### *facility*

Leaf-list. The kinds of messages that are sent to the host. Refer to “Usage Guidelines” on page 282 for the **system syslog** command for supported logging facilities.

You can send the log messages of multiple facilities to a host by creating multiple **facility** configuration nodes within the **host** configuration node.

#### *level*

The minimum severity level of log message that are reported. The level is any of **emerg**, **alert**, **crit**, **err**, **warning**, **notice**, **info**, or **debug**. Refer to “Usage Guidelines” for the system syslog command for the meanings of these levels.

By default, messages of **err** severity are logged to hosts.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  syslog {
    host hostname {
      facility facility {
        level level
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify which messages are sent to the remote syslog server.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify which messages are sent to the remote syslog server.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default file message configuration for the remote syslog server log.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the configuration for the remote syslog server.

## system syslog host <hostname> facility-override <facility>

Defines the facility override value that replaces the facility fields for all log entries sent to the specified host.

### Syntax

**set system syslog host** *hostname* **facility-override** *facility*

**delete system syslog host** *hostname* **facility-override**

**show system syslog** [ **host** *hostname* **facility-override** [ *facility* ] ]

### Parameters

*hostname*

An IP address or a host name configured with [system syslog host <hostname> facility <facility> level <level>](#) on page 291.

*facility*

The override facility value that replaces the facility fields for all log entries to the specified host messages. "[Usage Guidelines](#)" on page 282 for the **system syslog** command lists the supported logging facilities.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  syslog {
    host hostname {
      facility-override facility
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

A facility override only affects log entries sent to a host and does not affect entries set to a user, console, or file.

A facility override is specific to a host. Different hosts can have different override values.

Use the **set** form of this command to define the facility override value for all log entries sent to the specified host.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default facility values for the log entries sent to the specified host.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the configuration for the facility override configuration.

## system syslog user <userid> facility <facility> level <level>

Specifies which messages are sent to the terminal of a user.

### Syntax

```
set system syslog user userid facility facility level level
delete system syslog user userid facility [ facility [ level ] ]
show system syslog user userid facility [ facility [ level ] ]
```

### Parameters

#### *userid*

Multi-node. A user ID.

You can send log messages to multiple users by creating multiple **user** configuration nodes.

#### *facility*

Multi-node. The kinds of messages that are sent to the user. Refer to "Usage Guidelines" for the system syslog command for supported logging facilities.

You can send the log messages of multiple facilities to a user account by creating multiple **facility** configuration nodes within the **user** configuration node.

#### *level*

The minimum severity level of log message that are reported to the user. The level is any of **emerg**, **alert**, **crit**, **err**, **warning**, **notice**, **info**, or **debug**. Refer to "Usage Guidelines" for the system syslog command for the meanings of these levels.

By default, messages of **err** severity are logged to the terminal of the user.

### Modes

Configuration mode

### Configuration Statement

```
system {
  syslog {
    user userid {
      facility facility {
        level level
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Usage Guidelines

Use this command to specify which messages are sent to the terminal of a user.

Use the **set** form of this command to specify which messages are sent to the terminal of a user.

Use the **delete** form of this command to restore the default configuration of terminal messages for a user.

Use the **show** form of this command to display the configuration of terminal messages for a user.

# Loopback and Data Plane Interfaces

---

Following are the supported formats of the interface name:

- **lo** or **lo $n$** —The name of a loopback interface, where  $n$  ranges from 1 through 99999.
- **dp $x$ ypz**—The name of a data plane interface, where
  - **dp $x$**  specifies the data plane identifier (ID). Currently, only dp0 is supported.
  - **p $y$**  specifies a physical or virtual PCI slot index (for example, p129).
  - **p $z$**  specifies a port index (for example, p1). For example, dp0p1p2, dp0p160p1, and dp0p192p1.
- **dp $x$ em $y$** —The name of a data plane interface on a LAN-on-motherboard (LOM) device that does not have a PCI slot, where **em $y$**  specifies an embedded network interface number (typically, a small number). For example, dp0em3.
- **dp $x$ s $y$** —The name of a data plane interface on a device that is installed on a virtual PCI slot, where **s $y$**  specifies an embedded network interface number (typically, a small number). For example, dp0s2.
- **dp $x$ P $n$ ypz**—The name of a data plane interface on a device that is installed on a secondary PCI bus, where **P $n$**  specifies the bus number. You can use this format to name data plane interfaces on large physical devices with multiple PCI buses. For these devices, it is possible to have network interface cards installed on different buses with these cards having the same slot ID. The value of  $n$  must be an integer greater than 0. For example, dp0P1p162p1 and dp0P2p162p1.





# List of Acronyms

---

Acronym	Description
ACL	access control list
ADSL	Asymmetric Digital Subscriber Line
AH	Authentication Header
AMI	Amazon Machine Image
API	Application Programming Interface
AS	autonomous system
ARP	Address Resolution Protocol
AWS	Amazon Web Services
BGP	Border Gateway Protocol
BIOS	Basic Input Output System
BPDU	Bridge Protocol Data Unit
CA	certificate authority
CCMP	AES in counter mode with CBC-MAC
CHAP	Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol
CLI	command-line interface
DDNS	dynamic DNS
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DHCPv6	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol version 6
DLCI	data-link connection identifier
DMI	desktop management interface
DMVPN	dynamic multipoint VPN
DMZ	demilitarized zone
DN	distinguished name
DNS	Domain Name System
DSCP	Differentiated Services Code Point
DSL	Digital Subscriber Line
eBGP	external BGP
EBS	Amazon Elastic Block Storage
EC2	Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
EGP	Exterior Gateway Protocol
ECMP	equal-cost multipath
ESP	Encapsulating Security Payload
FIB	Forwarding Information Base
FTP	File Transfer Protocol
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation
HDLC	High-Level Data Link Control
I/O	Input/Output
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol

Acronym	Description
IDS	Intrusion Detection System
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
IGMP	Internet Group Management Protocol
IGP	Interior Gateway Protocol
IPS	Intrusion Protection System
IKE	Internet Key Exchange
IP	Internet Protocol
IPOA	IP over ATM
IPsec	IP Security
IPv4	IP Version 4
IPv6	IP Version 6
ISAKMP	Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol
ISM	Internet Standard Multicast
ISP	Internet Service Provider
KVM	Kernel-Based Virtual Machine
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol
LACP	Link Aggregation Control Protocol
LAN	local area network
LDAP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
LLDP	Link Layer Discovery Protocol
MAC	medium access control
mGRE	multipoint GRE
MIB	Management Information Base
MLD	Multicast Listener Discovery
MLPPP	multilink PPP
MRRU	maximum received reconstructed unit
MTU	maximum transmission unit
NAT	Network Address Translation
NBMA	Non-Broadcast Multi-Access
ND	Neighbor Discovery
NHRP	Next Hop Resolution Protocol
NIC	network interface card
NTP	Network Time Protocol
OSPF	Open Shortest Path First
OSPFv2	OSPF Version 2
OSPFv3	OSPF Version 3
PAM	Pluggable Authentication Module
PAP	Password Authentication Protocol
PAT	Port Address Translation
PCI	peripheral component interconnect
PIM	Protocol Independent Multicast
PIM-DM	PIM Dense Mode

Acronym	Description
PIM-SM	PIM Sparse Mode
PKI	Public Key Infrastructure
PPP	Point-to-Point Protocol
PPPoA	PPP over ATM
PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet
PPTP	Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol
PTMU	Path Maximum Transfer Unit
PVC	permanent virtual circuit
QoS	quality of service
RADIUS	Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service
RHEL	Red Hat Enterprise Linux
RIB	Routing Information Base
RIP	Routing Information Protocol
RIPng	RIP next generation
RP	Rendezvous Point
RPF	Reverse Path Forwarding
RSA	Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman
Rx	receive
S3	Amazon Simple Storage Service
SLAAC	Stateless Address Auto-Configuration
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol
SONET	Synchronous Optical Network
SPT	Shortest Path Tree
SSH	Secure Shell
SSID	Service Set Identifier
SSM	Source-Specific Multicast
STP	Spanning Tree Protocol
TACACS+	Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus
TBF	Token Bucket Filter
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TKIP	Temporal Key Integrity Protocol
ToS	Type of Service
TSS	TCP Maximum Segment Size
Tx	transmit
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
VHD	virtual hard disk
vif	virtual interface
VLAN	virtual LAN
VPC	Amazon virtual private cloud
VPN	virtual private network
VRRP	Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol

Acronym	Description
WAN	wide area network
WAP	wireless access point
WPA	Wired Protected Access